



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



253 205

ELEMENTARY  
LATIN GRAMMAR

ROBY AND WILKINS

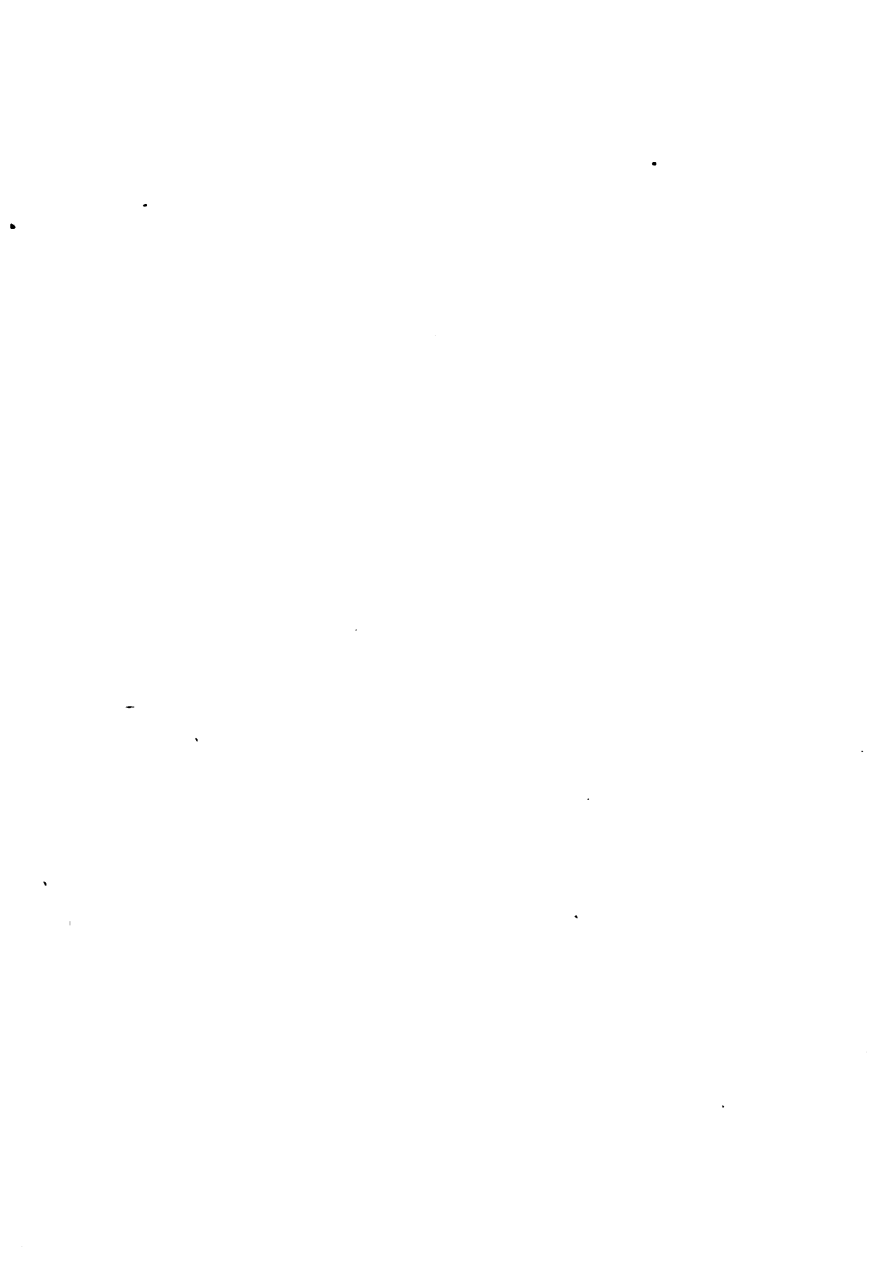


REESE LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

APR 13 1901

*Received* ....., 189 .

*Accessions No.* 55164. *Class No.* 760  
R66B

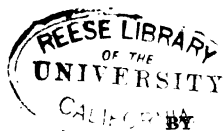




ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR



AN ELEMENTARY  
LATIN GRAMMAR



HENRY JOHN ROBY

M.A., LL.D.

AND

A. S. WILKINS

LITT.D., LL.D.

London

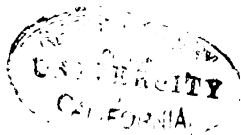
MACMILLAN AND CO.

AND NEW YORK

1893



55164



## PREFACE

PA 2087

R 68

1893

MAIN

THIS book is intended to be used as an introduction to Mr. Roby's *Latin Grammar for Schools*. Hence much has been intentionally omitted which is commonly given in Latin grammars, but which is of little or no use to the pupil who is engaged with the elements of the language. Some parts of the larger book have been reproduced with slight omissions and occasional simplifications of language, other parts have been greatly reduced, especially in the Syntax. The main purposes of its preparation have been that the pupil should have nothing to unlearn when he proceeds to his more advanced work, and that the facts of the language should be, so far as possible, explained, and not left to be a matter of memory.

Some useful suggestions have been received from Mr. S. G. Owen, of Christ Church, Oxford.

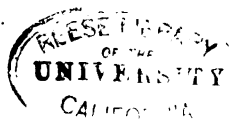
A. S. W.



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
§ 1. The Latin Language . . . . .	1
§ 2. Alphabet . . . . .	2
§§ 3-4. Consonants . . . . .	3
§ 5. Vowels . . . . .	3
§ 6. Quantity . . . . .	4
§ 7. Accent . . . . .	4
§§ 8-9. Phonetic Changes . . . . .	4
§§ 10-12. Inflexions in general . . . . .	6
§§ 13-32. Inflexions of Nouns . . . . .	8
First Class (§§ 14-18) . . . . .	9
Second Class (§§ 19-24) . . . . .	14
i Stems and Consonant Stems (§§ 25-31) . . . . .	22
Greek Nouns (§ 32) . . . . .	28
§§ 33-39. Pronominal Adjectives . . . . .	29
§ 40. Certain Pronouns . . . . .	33
§§ 41-43. Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	35
§§ 44-47. Numerals . . . . .	37
§§ 48-51. Adverbs . . . . .	45
§§ 52-74. Inflexions of Verbs . . . . .	49
Examples of Inflexions of Verbs—Consonant and a stems (§§ 56-64) . . . . .	53
Other Vowel Conjugations (§§ 65-70) . . . . .	66
Deponent Verbs (§ 71) . . . . .	74
Irregular Verbs (§§ 72-74) . . . . .	75
§§ 75-79. Verbal Stems . . . . .	81
§§ 80-81. List of Irregular Verbs . . . . .	84

	PAGE
§§ 82-155. <i>Syntax</i> . . . . .	109
Principal Use of Cases (§ 84) . . . . .	111
Nominative (§ 85) . . . . .	112
Accusative (§ 86) . . . . .	113
Dative (§ 87) . . . . .	114
Ablative (§ 88) . . . . .	115
Genitive (§ 89) . . . . .	117
§ 90. Infinitive . . . . .	118
§ 91. Gerunds, Gerundive, Supine . . . . .	118
§ 92. Participles . . . . .	120
§§ 93-95. Indeclinable Words . . . . .	120
Adverbs (§ 93), Prepositions (§ 94), Conjunctions (§ 95) . . . . .	120
§§ 96-102. Use of Verb Inflexions . . . . .	122
Inflexions of Voice (§§ 96-99) . . . . .	122
Inflexions of Person and Number (§§ 100-102) . . . . .	125
§§ 103-111. Indicative Mood and its Tenses . . . . .	128
§ 112. Imperative Mood . . . . .	134
§§ 113-123. Subjunctive Mood . . . . .	135
§§ 124-129. Contrasted Uses of the Indicative . . . . .	140
§§ 130-136. Reported Speech . . . . .	142
§§ 137-139. Different Kinds of Sentences . . . . .	148
§ 140. Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	150
§§ 141-146. Some Uses of the Cases . . . . .	151
§§ 147-151. Use of Pronouns . . . . .	154
§§ 152-154. Use of Conjunctions . . . . .	156
§ 155. Interrogations . . . . .	157
APPENDIX—	
A. Roman Money . . . . .	159
B. Roman Reckoning of Time . . . . .	160
C. Relations by Blood and Marriage . . . . .	163
D. Abbreviations of Names . . . . .	163
E. Roman Writers . . . . .	164
F. Prosody and Metre . . . . .	165



## ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR

1. LATIN was the language spoken by the inhabitants of a district on the western side of Italy, hundreds of years B.C. Of this tract the chief town was Rome, and the conquests of the Romans spread the language over the neighbouring countries. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, Portugal, Wallachia, and of parts of Eastern Switzerland, are derived from it; and mainly through the influence of the Christian Church it was the language principally used in European literature, law, state documents, and learned intercourse, during the Middle Ages.

The Latin language was at its best from about 100 B.C. to about 100 A.D. The greatest writers flourished during this period; and it is the language of their writings which is especially treated of in this grammar.

Latin belongs to the group of languages which includes the Greek, Keltic, Teutonic, and Slavonic families in Europe, and the chief languages of Persia and India in Asia. There are many points of resemblance between Latin and all of these, both in vocabulary and in inflexions.

## ALPHABET

2. The following table contains the letters of the Latin alphabet as used in Cicero's time, with their names and probable pronunciation.

Sign.	Name.	Pronounced as English
A	a	a in <i>papa</i> .
B	be	b
C	ce	k
D	de	d
E	e	a in <i>late</i> , or e in <i>fête</i> .
F	ef	f
G	ge	g hard, as in <i>give</i> .
H	ha	h in <i>hat</i> .
I	i	ee in <i>feet</i> , or i in <i>machine</i> .
K	ka	k
L	el	l
M	em	m (except at end of words).
N	en	n, but when before a guttural as <i>ng</i> .
O	o	o, approaching to <i>au</i> .
P	pe	p
Q	qu	q = k.
R	er	r (trilled).
S	es	s, sharp, as in <i>hiss</i> , not <i>his</i> .
T	te	t
V	u	oo in <i>shoot</i> or u in <i>brute</i> .
X	ix	x

To which may be added two letters used only in copying Greek words, namely—

Y	u French, or ii German.
Z	English z, or perhaps dz.

## CONSONANTS

3. Consonants are classified according to the character of the sound.

Of the Latin consonants **p, b**; **c, g**; **t, d** are *momentary*, or *non-continuous* (often called *mutes*), that is to say, the voice cannot dwell upon them; **s** and **f** are *continuous*.

Again **p, c, t, s, f** are *voiceless*, i.e. they are not accompanied by any sound of the voice; **b, g, d** and usually **r, l**, are *voiced*,<sup>1</sup> that is, they cannot be pronounced without some sound of the voice.

If the air is allowed to pass through the nose instead of the mouth, the sounds **m, n**, and **ng** (a single sound, as in *sing*) are produced instead of **b, d, g**. Such sounds are called *nasal*.

**k** was little used, and was always followed by **a**; **q** was always followed by **u**, and **qu** (pronounced as in English) regarded in prosody as a single consonant.

**x** was merely written for **cs**.

4. The following Table shows the classification of Latin consonants.

	NON-CONTINUOUS. Voiceless. Voiced.		NASAL. Usually Voiced.	CONTINUOUS. Voiceless. Voiced.	
LABIAL ( <i>lip</i> sounds).	<b>p</b>	<b>b</b>	<b>m</b>		
LABIODENTAL.					
GUTTURAL ( <i>throat</i> sounds)	<b>c, k, q</b>	<b>g</b>	<b>n</b> before <b>a</b> guttural.		
DENTAL ( <i>tooth</i> sounds).	<b>t</b>	<b>d</b>	<b>n</b> (when not before <b>a</b> guttural).	<b>s</b>	
LINGUAL ( <i>tongue</i> sounds; also called <i>liquids</i> )				<b>r, l</b> (usually)	

## VOWELS

5. **a** is the simplest vowel; for **e** and **i** the back part of the tongue is raised; for **o** and **u** the lips are pushed forward. **e** is a middle sound between **a** and **i**; and **o** a middle sound between **a** and **u**.

**i** and **u**, when pronounced rapidly before other vowels, become half consonants, and in modern books are usually printed **j** and **v**. The sound of **i** or **j** then becomes as English **y** in *yes*; the sound of **u** or **v** becomes as French *ou* in *oui*, or nearly as English *w* in *we*.

<sup>1</sup> For *voiceless* the terms *sharp, hard, surd* and Latin 'tenuēs' are also used; for *voiced* the terms *flat, soft, sonant* and Latin 'mediae.'



*Diphthongs* are sounds produced in the passage from one vowel sound to another. The right rule for pronouncing diphthongs is to sound the two vowels rapidly one after the other.

Thus **au** as German *au*, a somewhat broader sound than the ordinary English *ow* in *cow*, *town*.

**eu** as a Cockney or Yankee pronunciation of *ow* in *cow*, *town*.

**æ** nearly as the single vowel *a* in English *hat*, lengthened.

**ei** nearly as in English *feint*, or *ai* in *faint*.

**oe** between *oi* in *boil*, and *ei* in *feint*.

The vowels may be arranged thus, so as to suggest the relation of one to another.

	a	
	e	o
i	y	u

## QUANTITY

6. Vowels are either *long* by nature, as *ā*, or *short* by nature, as *ă*.

The pronunciation of the vowels is given by the following English examples: *āhā*, *dēmēsne*, *quīnine*, *prēmōte*, *Zūlū*. Vowels are said to be (usually) long by position, when followed by two consonants, as *ārdet*; more correctly the *syllable* is long, the vowel and the first consonant counting as a long vowel. Sometimes a vowel in such a position may be taken as either long or short; it is then called *common*, and is marked thus, *pātrēm*.

## ACCENT

7. One syllable in every Latin word which contains more than one, is pronounced with more stress than the rest. In words of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable, as *māgnus*; in other cases it falls on the last syllable but one, if that be long, either by nature or by position, as *indīco*, otherwise on the last but two, as *indīco*.

## PHONETIC CHANGES

8. Many words underwent changes which made them easier for the Romans to pronounce. Some of the most frequent changes are the following:—

Whole syllables were sometimes omitted, as *vĕnĕ-fĭcium* for

*vĕnĕnĭ-fĭcium*, *poison-making* ; *vŏluntas* (for *vŏluntĭtas*), *willingness*, from *vŏlens*, *willing*.

When three consonants come together, the middle one is often omitted, as *fulmen*, *lightning* (for *fulgmen*), from *fulgĕre*, *to flash* ; *mul-si* (for *mulcsi*), perfect of *mulcĕre*, *to stroke*.

Of two consonants the former is often assimilated either (1) completely or (2) partially to the latter, as (1) *ces-si* for *ced-si*, *sum-mus* for *sub-mus*, *puel-la* for *puer-la*, *op-pŏno* for *ob-pŏno*, *ac-curro* for *ad-curro* ; (2) *scrip-tus* for *scrib-tus*, *op-tĭneo* for *ob-tĭneo*, *con-tĭneo* for *com-tĭneo*, *im-berbis* for *in-berbis*.

s between two vowels is changed to r, as *ŏnŭs*, *ŏnĕr-is* (compare *ŏnus-tus*), *dirĭmo* for *dis-ĕmo*.

9. Vowels are changed often in composition and inflexions.

a. Root-vowels are changed, when by a syllable being prefixed, as in compound words, the root syllable loses the first place.

Thus a changes usually to e before two consonants or before r, as *damno*, *condemno* ; *fĕcio*, *effectus* ; *pĕrio*, *comperio*.

a to i usually before ng or any single consonant except r, as *tango*, *attingo* ; *fĕcio*, *efficio*.

e to i, as *lĕgo*, *collĭgo* ; *ĕmo*, *ĕdĭmo*.

ae to i, as *aestĭmo*, *existĭmo* ; *caedo*, *incido*.

b. In suffixes usually

ŏ changes to ĭ, as *cardon-*, *cardĭnis* ; *alto-*, *altĭ-tŭdo*.

ĕ to ĭ, as *illĕ*, *illĭc* ; *undĕ*, *undĭque* ; *agmĕn*, *agmĭn-is*, but e remains before r, as *pĭpĕr*, *pĭpĕr-is*, and before two consonants, as *nutrĭmen*, *nutrimentum* (compare *nŭtrĭmĭn-is*).

c. Short vowels are often omitted between two consonants, as *audacter* for *audācĭ-tĕr*, *vinculum* for *vincŭlum*, *dextrā* for *dextĕrā*.

h and v between two vowels are often omitted and the vowels then coalesce, as *mĭ* for *mĭhi*, *prendo* for *prĕhendo*, *audisse* for *audĭvisse*, *amāram* for *amāvĕram*.

d. The quantity of vowels is sometimes changed ; thus short vowels are lengthened

(1) When a consonant is omitted, as *jŭ-mentum*, *a plough beast*, from *jŭgum*, *a yoke* ; *cĕsus*, *a fall* (for *cadtus*), from *cādĕre*, *to fall*.

(2) In forming the perfect tenses of verbs, as *lĕgo*, *lĕgi*, *ĕgo*, *ĕgi*.

(3) By contraction with another vowel, as *fructŭs* (genitive of *fructŭs*) is contracted to *fructŭs*.

e. Long vowels are shortened chiefly when the syllable becomes the last in the word, as *calcĕr* for *calcĕre*, *ĕmĕtŏr* compared with the genitive *ĕmĕtŏris*.

## INFLEXIONS IN GENERAL

10. Latin, like English, has many words which never vary in form, and many others which vary according to their particular use. Thus *man builds, men build, man built, man's building* are all sayings which contain two words altered in order to change the meaning. Of these words *man* expresses an existing thing, *build* expresses an action. Grammarians call *man* a noun, *build* a verb. NOUNS (including pronouns and adjectives) and VERBS are the two great classes of words which are subject to change. The other parts of speech (adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions, interjections), commonly called particles, as *happily, and, after, alas*, do not change.

In Latin, both nouns and verbs have more changes than they have in English. These changes consist mainly of additions or other changes at the end of the word, sometimes of additions at the beginning, sometimes of changes in the middle. Thus in English *man's, built, building* show additions or changes at the end of the word; *men* (compared with *man*) shows a change in the middle.

A word, so far as it thus changes according to its use, is said to be *inflected*. The additions or changes are called *inflexions*; the more permanent part of the word is called the *stem*. This remains unchanged unless affected by the suffix.

11. Nouns are divided into two classes, *nouns substantive*, which express things, and *nouns adjective*, which express the nature of things. In English the former are inflected to denote number and case, e.g. *man, man's, men, men's*. The latter are not so inflected, e.g. *good man, good man's (food), good men*. In Latin both nouns substantive and nouns adjective are inflected. Nouns substantive are inflected to denote the number as well as the case, as *hominis, man's; homines, men; hominum, men's*. Nouns adjective

are trebly inflected, *i.e.* they are changed to denote the gender (*i.e.* sex or imagined sex) of the person or thing denoted, and they are changed also to denote the case (like *man's*) and the number (like *men*), as **bonus**, *good he*; **bona**, *good she*; **bonum**, *good thing*; plural, **boni**, *good he's*; **bonae**, *good she's*; **bona**, *good things*; **bonorum** (**cibus**), *good men's (food)*, etc. Pronouns are sometimes inflected like nouns, but more commonly like adjectives. The inflexions in Latin nouns are, as has been shown, much more numerous than in English.

12. Verbs again in Latin differ much from verbs in English. Not only are there many more changes to express different persons and numbers, different tenses and moods, but each form of a verb in Latin, which is not of the nature of a noun, is complete in itself and expresses a complete meaning. In English we require a pronoun or noun with the verb, *e.g.* *I love, thou lovest, he loves*. In Latin **amo** expresses by itself *I love*, **amas** expresses by itself *thou lovest*, **amat** expresses by itself *a person loves*, but may be *he loves* or *she loves*. Different forms are used for the plural, *e.g.* **amamus**, *we love*; **amatis**, *ye love*; **amant**, *they love*.

Different forms again are used for past time, *e.g.* **amabam**, *I was loving*; **amabas**, *thou wast loving*; **amabat**, *he was loving*; **amabamus**, *we were loving*; **amabatis**, *ye were loving*; **amabant**, *they were loving*. Other forms slightly or considerably changed are used to denote future time or commands or wishes or the like. What in English is often expressed by combinations of different words is in Latin often expressed by changes in the same word.

## INFLEXIONS OF NOUNS

13. The inflexions of nouns and pronouns are in the main the same. The inflexions of verbs are quite distinct.

The inflexions of nouns are always additions to or alterations in the *end* of the stem. They serve to mark the *gender*, the *case*, and the *number* of the word.

There are in Latin

Three genders, called *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.

Six cases, called *nominative*, *accusative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *locative*, and *ablative*. (*The use of these cases is explained in § 84.*)

(In some nouns another form is found to which the name of *vocative* case has often been applied.)

Two numbers, singular and plural.

Nouns are divided into two classes—

The first class has the genitive plural ending in *-ārum*, or *-ērum*, or *-ōrum*.

The second class has the genitive plural ending in *-uum*, or *-ium*, or in *-um* preceded by a consonant.

## FIRST CLASS

14. The first class contains stems ending in **a** or **e** or **o**.

1. Stems in **a** :

*Examples.*—**āquā** (*f.*), *water* ; **bŏnā**, *a good she* ; **scribā**, (*m.*), *a clerk* ; **Claudiā**, *a woman of the Claudian house*.

*Singular.*

Nom.	āquā	bŏnā	scribā	Claudiā
Acc.	āquām	bŏnām	scribām	Claudiām
Gen.	} āquae	bŏnae	scribae	Claudiae
Loc.				
Dat.				
Abl.	āquā	bŏnā	scribā	Claudiā

*Plural.*

Nom.	āquae	bŏnae	scribae	Claudiae
Acc.	āquās	bŏnās	scribās	Claudiās
Gen.	āquārum	bŏnārum	scribārum	Claudiārum
Loc.	} āquīs	bŏnīs	scribīs	Claudiīs
Dat.				
Abl.				

Old forms : genitive singular, -āi or -ās for -ae ; āquāi, fāmilliās, for aquae, familiāe.

Poetic form : genitive plural, -um for -ārum, caellicŏlum for caellicolarum.

Old form : dat. abl. plural, filiābus for filiīs.

Most nouns of this class are feminine, as **terrā**, *land* ; **silvā**, *a wood* ; **glōriā**, *glory* ; **ānimā**, *breath* ; **mŏrā**, *delay*.

Masculine are a few which denote male persons, such as **agricŏlā**, *a farmer* ; **incŏlā**, *an inhabitant* ; **advēnā**, *a new-comer* ; **pŏēta**, *a poet* ; **transfūgā**, *a deserter*.

15.

2. Stems in *e* :

Two words only have forms for all cases, viz. *rēs* (*f.*), *a thing*; *diēs* (*m. f.*), *a day*. Few have any plural.

*Singular.*

Nom.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>āciēs</i>
Acc.	<i>rēm</i>	<i>diēm</i>	<i>āciēm</i>
Gen.	} <i>rei</i> or <i>rē</i>	<i>diēi</i> or <i>diē</i>	<i>āciī</i> or <i>aciē</i>
Loc.			
Dat.			
Abl.	<i>rē</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>āciē</i>

*Plural.*

Nom.	} <i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>āciēs</i>
Acc.			
Gen.	<i>rērūm</i>	<i>diērūm</i>	not found
Loc.	} <i>rēbūs</i>	<i>diēbūs</i>	not found
Dat.			
Abl.			

In singular *spēs* and *fidēs* are like *res*; *fācies*, *effigies*, *spēcies*, *sēries* like *acies*.

All these have in plural only the nom. and acc.

The termination *-ei* was sometimes two syllables, either *-ēi* or *-ēī*, but generally probably a diphthong.

Thus *rēī*, *fidēī* in Lucretius; *rēi*, *fidēi* later; but also *spēī*, *rēī*, *fidēī* (*-ei* being one syllable).

The form *die* is used as the locative.

16.

## 3. Stems in o :

*Examples.*—**dōmīnūs** (*m.*), a lord ; **bōnus** (*m. adj.*), a good he ; **bellum** (*n.*), war ; **bōnum** (*n. adj.*), a good thing.

*Singular.*

	Subst.	Adj.	Subst.	Adj.
Nom.	dōmīnūs	bōnūs	bellūm	bōnūm
Acc.	dōmīnūm	bōnūm	bellūm	bōnūm
Gen.	} dōmīnī	bōnī	bellī	bōnī
Loc.				
Dat.	} dōmīnō	bōnō	bellō	bōnō
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	dōmīnī	bōnī	bellā	bōnā
Acc.	dōmīnōs	bōnōs	bellā	bōnā
Gen.	} dōmīnōrūm	bōnōrūm	bellōrūm	bōnōrūm
Loc.				
Dat.	} dōmīnīs	bōnīs	bellīs	bōnīs
Abl.				

Such masculine nouns have a form called the vocative used in addressing a person : thus **dōmīne**, *O lord* ; **bōnē**, *my good man*. But one word, **deus**, *God*, has no such form.

The nominative and accusative singular retained the earlier **-os** and **-om** in old Latin. The gen. plur. is in **-um** for **-orum** in some names of weights and measures, and of nations in poetry, and in a few other cases.

*Examples.*—*Masculine*—**annus**, a year ; **ocūlus**, an eye ; **ānīmus**, the soul.

*Feminine*—**hūmus**, the ground ; and many names of trees, as **alnus**, alder ; **fāgus**, beech ; **pōpūlus**, poplar ; **quercus**, oak ; **ulmus**, elm.

*Neuter*—**oppīdum**, a town ; **fōrum**, market - place ; **verbum**, a word.

*Adjectives*—**magnus**, great ; **multus**, many ; **mālus**, bad ; **longus**, long ; **nūdus**, naked ; **prīmus**, first ; **dēcīmus**, tenth.



17. Stems in **-ro** generally drop the final **us** in nominative singular. Many omit **e** before **r**. Instances of different kinds are—

**nūmērus**, a number ; **puēr**, a boy ; **āgēr**, a piece of land ; **vīr**, a man.

*Singular.*

Nom.	nūmērus	puēr	āgēr	vīr
Acc.	nūmērum	puērum	āgrum	vīrum
Gen.	nūmērī	puērī	āgrī	vīrī
Loc.				
Dat.	nūmērō	puērō	agrō	vīrō
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	nūmērī	puērī	agrī	vīrī
Acc.	nūmērōs	puērōs	agrōs	vīrōs
Gen.	nūmērōrum	puērōrum	agrōrum	vīrōrum
Loc.	nūmērīs	puērīs	agrīs	vīrīs
Dat.				
Abl.				

Like **nūmērus** are declined **ērus** (or **hērus**), a master ; **ūmērus** (or **hūmērus**), a shoulder ; and the adjectives **fērūs**, wild ; **prōpērūs**, hasty ; **prospērūs**, favourable.

Like **puēr**, are **sōcēr**, father-in-law ; **gēnēr**, son-in-law ; **vespēr**, evening star ; and the adjectives **asper**, rough ; **liber**, free ; **mīsēr**, wretched ; **tēner**, tender.

Similarly **sātūr**, **sātūrā**, **satūrum**, satiated.

Like **āgēr** are declined **āpēr**, a wild boar ; **fābēr**, a workman ; **libēr**, bark, a book ; and the adjectives **noster**, our ; **vester**, your : **dexter**, right (hand), and **sinister**, left, are usually so declined, but sometimes retain the **e**, like **tēner**.

18. In the best period stems in **-vo** or **-quo** retained in nominative and accusative singular **-ōs**, **-ōm** instead of **-ūs**, **-ūm**.

Thus **ēquōs**, *a horse* (also spelt **ēcūs**) ; **aequom**, *equity* ; but in modern books we usually find **-us**, **-um**.

In substantives in **-io** the genitive singular ended in single **i**, except in some poetry.

*Singular.*

Nom.	<b>servōs</b>	<b>aequōm</b>	<b>filīus</b>	<b>impēriūm</b>
Acc.	<b>servōm</b>	<b>aequōm</b>	<b>filīūm</b>	<b>imperīūm</b>
Gen.	} <b>servī</b>	<b>aequī</b>	<b>filī</b>	<b>impēri</b>
Loc.				
Dat.	} <b>servo</b>	<b>aequo</b>	<b>filio</b>	<b>impēriq</b>
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	<b>servi</b>	<b>aequi</b>	<b>filii</b>	<b>imperīā</b>
Acc.	<b>servōs</b>	<b>aequōs</b>	<b>filīōs</b>	<b>imperīā</b>
Gen.	<b>servōrum</b>	<b>aequōrum</b>	<b>filīōrum</b>	<b>imperīōrum</b>
Loc.	} <b>servīs</b>	<b>aequīs</b>	<b>filiis</b>	<b>impērtis</b>
Dat.				
Abl.				

Like **servōs** are **ēquōs**, *a horse* ; **āvōs**, *a grandfather* ; **dīvōs**, *a god* ; **rivōs**, *a stream* ; **clīvōs**, *a slope* ; **cōquōs** (or **cocus**), *a cook* ; and many adjectives, as **cāvōs**, *hollow* ; **nōvōs**, *new* ; **parvōs**, *small* ; **saevōs**, *raging* ; **vivōs**, *alive* ; **exiguōs**, *small* ; **vācuōs**, *empty* ; **antiquōs**, *ancient*, etc.

Like **aequōm** are **aevōm**, *age* ; **arvōm**, *a ploughed field* ; **ōvōm**, *an egg*.

Like **filius** are many proper names, as **Claudius**, **Fābius**, **Livius**, **Servius**, **Dēcīus**, **Jūlius**, **Hōrātius**, **Vergīlius**, etc.

Like **impēriūm** are **gaudium**, *joy* ; **ōdium**, *hatred* ; **officium**, *duty* ; **consīlium**, *advice*, etc.

(N.B.—Adjectives have gen. sing. always in **-ī**, as **medīi**, **egregīi**.)

## SECOND CLASS

19. The second class of nouns contains stems ending in **u** or **i** or a consonant.

1. Stems in **u** :

*Examples*—**mānus** (*f.*), *hand* ; **visus** (*m.*), *sight* ; **gēnu** (*n.*), *knee*.

*Singular.*

Nom.	<b>mānūs</b>	<b>visūs</b>	<b>gēnū</b>
Acc.	<b>mānūm</b>	<b>visūm</b>	<b>gēnū</b>
Gen.	<b>mānūs</b>	<b>visūs</b>	<b>gēnūs</b>
Dat.	<b>mānūi</b>	<b>visui</b>	<b>gēnui</b>
Loc.	} <b>mānū</b>	<b>visū</b>	<b>gēnū</b>
Abl.			

*Plural.*

Nom.	} <b>mānūs</b>	<b>visūs</b>	<b>gēnūā</b>
Acc.			
Gen.	<b>mānuum</b>	<b>visuum</b>	<b>gēnuum</b>
Dat.	} <b>mānibus</b>	<b>visibus</b>	<b>gēnibus</b>
Loc.			
Abl.			

So also **grādus**, *a step* ; **aestus**, *heat* ; **gēmītus**, *a groan* ; **tōnitrus** (also **tonitru**), *thunder* ; **ductus**, *leading*, etc.

The dative singular sometimes, especially in poetry, ends in **-ui** for **-ui**, as **visui**.

The abl. plural in some words ends in **-ibus**, as **ācūs**, *needle*, **ācūbus** ; **arcus**, *bow*, **arcūbus** ; **artus**, *joint*, **artūbus** ; **partus**, *birth*, **partūbus** ; **tribus**, *tribe*, **tribūbus**.

20. Some words are found with inflexions both from o stems and from u stems. The most important word of this kind is **dōmus** (*f.*), *a home*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	dōmūs	dōmūs
Acc.	domum	dōmōs or dōmūs
Gen.	dōmūs	dōmōrum or dōmuum
Dat.	domui, rarely domo	} dōmībūs
Loc.	dōmī	
Abl.	dōmō, rarely domu	

	<i>Singular.</i>			
Nom.	cōlus, <i>distaff</i>	cupressus	laurus	pīnus
Acc.	colum	cupressum	laurum	pinum
Gen.	{ coll colūs	{ cupressi cupressus	{ lauri laurus	{ pini pinus
Dat.	colo	cupresso	lauro	pino
Abl.	{ colo colu	{ cupresso cupressu	{ lauro lauru	pinu

	<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	colūs	{ cupressi cupressus (rarely)	{ lauri laurus	{ pini (rarely) pinus
Acc.		cupressus	{ lauros laurūs	{ pinos pinus
Gen.				pinōrum
Dat.	}			
Abl.			lauris	pinis

**quercus** (*oak*) besides u stem has abl. s. *querco* and gen. pl. *quercorum*.

**myrtus** (*myrtle*) has rarely nom. acc. plur. *myrtūs*. Otherwise it is an o stem.

**arcus** (*bow*) besides u stem has gen. sing. *arci* or *arqui*; **humus** (*the ground*) has locative *humī*.

In Early Latin a genitive singular in *i* is frequent from verbal nouns, as *adventi*, *fructi*, *gēmīti*, *quaesti*, *sumpti*.

## 21.

## 2. Stems in i :

Of these some have nominative in *-ēs*, some in *-is*, some in *-s* preceded by a consonant or long vowel. Instead of *-ris* we often find *-er*. Neuters have nominative in *ē*.

*Examples.*—*nūbēs* (f.), *cloud*; *puppis* (f.), *stern of a ship*; *tristis* (m. f.), *tristē* (n.), *sad*; *urbs* (f.), *city*; *lux* (f.), *light*; *ars* (f.), *art*; *marē* (n.), *sea*; *animālis* (adj.), *animal*; *imber* (m.), *a storm of rain*.

*Singular.*

Nom.	nūbēs	puppis	tristis	tristē
Acc.	nubem	puppim or puppem	tristem	tristē
Gen.	nubis	puppis		tristis
Dat.	nubi	puppi		tristi
Loc.	} nubē	puppē		tristi
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	nubēs	puppēs	tristēs	tristiā
Acc.	nubēs or nubis	puppēs or puppis	tristēs or tristis	tristiā
Gen.	nubium	puppium		tristium
Dat.	} nubibūs	puppibūs		tristibūs
Loc.				
Abl.				

*Singular.*

Nom.	urbs	lūx	ars	imbēr
Acc.	urbem	lūcem	artem	imbrem
Gen.	urbis	lucis	artis	imbris
Dat.	urbī	lucī	artī	imbri
Loc.	} urbē	lucē	artē	imbrē or imbri
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	urbēs	lūcēs	artēs	imbres
Acc.	urbēs or urbīs	lūcēs or lucīs	artēs or artis	imbrēs or imbris
Gen.	urbium	(not found)	artium	imbrium
Dat.	} urbībūs	lucībūs	artībūs	imbrībūs
Loc.				
Abl.				

*Singular.*

Nom.	mārē	ānimālīs	ānimālē
Acc.	marē	animalem	animale
Gen.	marīs	animalis	
Dat.	} mari	animali	
Loc.			
Abl.			

*Plural.*

Nom.	māriā	animales	animalia
Acc.	māriā	animālēs	animāliā
Gen.	marium	animalium	
Dat.	} marībūs	animalībūs	
Loc.			
Abl.			

As a substantive we have nom. acc. **animal**, abl. sing. **animālē**; other cases like the adjective.

**ācēr**, *sharp*, has nom. sing. **ācēr** (*m.*), **ācrīs** (*m. f.*), **acrē** (*n.*) Except for the use of **ācēr** for nom. s. masc. it is declined exactly like **trīstis**.

## 22.

## 3. Consonant stems :

STEMS ENDING IN MUTES form nom. sing. by adding **s** ;  
t or d before this **s** is omitted.

**ē** before final stem consonant becomes **i** except in nom.  
sing. **ū** before final stem consonant often becomes **i**,  
except in nom. sing.

Sometimes where **i** in the other cases is the earlier form,  
this becomes **ē** in the nom. sing.

*Examples.*—**princeps** (*adj.*), stem **princēp-**, *chief* ;  
**jūdex** (*m. f.*), stem **jūdic-**, *a judge* ;  
**rex** (*m.*), stem **rēg-**, *a king* ;  
**civitas** (*f.*), stem **civītāt-**, *citizenship* ;  
**ēquēs** (*m. f.*), stem **ēquēt-**, *horseman* ;  
**cāpūt** (*n.*), stem **cāpūt-**, *head* ;  
**pēs** (*m.*), stem **pēd-**, *a foot*.

*Singular.*

Nom.	<b>princep-s</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	<b>jūdex</b>	<b>rēx</b>
Acc.	<b>princīp-em</b> ( <i>m. f.</i> )		
	<b>princep-s</b> ( <i>n.</i> )	<b>judic-em</b>	<b>rēg-em</b>
Gen.	<b>princip-is</b>	<b>judic-is</b>	<b>reg-is</b>
Dat.	<b>princip-i</b>	<b>judic-i</b>	<b>reg-i</b>
Loc.	} <b>princip-ē</b>	<b>judic-ē</b>	<b>reg-ē</b>
Abl.			

*Plural.*

Nom.	} <b>princīp-ēs</b> ( <i>m. f.</i> ) ( <i>no neut.</i> )	<b>jūdic-ēs</b>	<b>rēg-ēs</b>
Acc.			
Gen.	<b>princip-um</b>	<b>judic-um</b>	<b>reg-um</b>
Dat.	} <b>princip-ibūs</b>	<b>judic-ibūs</b>	<b>reg-ibūs</b>
Loc.			
Abl.			

*Singular.*

Nom.	cīvītās	ēquēs	cāpūt	pēs
Acc.	civitāt-em	equit-em	caput	pēd-em
Gen.	civitāt-is	equit-is	capit-is	ped-is
Dat.	civitāt-ī	equit-ī	capit-ī	ped-ī
Loc.	} civitat-ē	equit-ē	capit-ē	ped-ē
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	} cīvītāt-ēs	ēquit-ēs	cāpit-ā	pēd-ēs
Acc.				
Gen.	civitāt-um	equit-um	capit-um	ped-um
Dat.	} civitat-ībūs	equit-ībūs	capit-ībūs	ped-ībūs
Loc.				
Abl.				

**Civitas** and a few other nouns with stem in *tāt-* have sometimes *-ium* in gen. plur.

**23. STEMS ENDING IN n** form the nominative singular in one of two ways—

Those ending in *-ōn* and *-ōn* (all being masc. or fem.) drop the final *n*, the *o* then being always long in good Latin; in the cases other than nominative singular *-ōn* becomes *-īn*.

Those ending in *-ēn* remain unchanged; in the cases other than nominative singular *-ēn* becomes *-īn*. Most of these are in *-mēn*, and all these except **flamen** (*m.*) are neuter.

As *Examples*: **hōmo** (*m. f.*), stem **hōmōn-**, a man;  
**ōrātio** (*f.*), stem **ōrātiōn-**, speech;  
**tibicēn** (*m.*), stem **tibicēn-**, a flute-player;  
**nōmēn** (*n.*), stem **nōmēn-**, a name.



*Singular.*

Nom.	<b>hōmo</b>	<b>ōrātiō</b>	<b>tībicēn</b>	<b>nōmēn</b>
Acc.	<b>hōmīn-em</b>	<b>ōrātiōn-em</b>	<b>tībicīn-em</b>	<b>nōmēn</b>
Gen.	<b>homin-īs</b>	<b>oration-īs</b>	<b>tibicin-īs</b>	<b>nomīn-īs</b>
Dat.	<b>homin-ī</b>	<b>oration-ī</b>	<b>tibicin-ī</b>	<b>nomin-ī</b>
Loc.	<b>} homin-ē</b>	<b>oration-ē</b>	<b>tibicin-ē</b>	<b>nomin-ē</b>
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	<b>} hōmīn-ēs</b>	<b>ōrātiōn-ēs</b>	<b>tībicīn-ēs</b>	<b>nōmīn-ē</b>
Acc.				
Gen.	<b>homin-um</b>	<b>oration-um</b>	<b>tibicin-um</b>	<b>nomin-um</b>
Dat.	<b>} homin-</b>	<b>oration-</b>	<b>tibicin-</b>	<b>nomin-ībūs</b>
Loc.				
Abl.				

**24. STEMS ENDING IN l, r, s** are used as the nom. sing. without addition or change, except that some neuters change **-ōr** into **-ūr**, others **-ōs** into **-ūs**.

Stems in **s** change **s** into **r** (also **-ūs** into **-ēr**) before a vowel, *i.e.* in all cases except nom. sing.

(Thus a nom. neut. in **-ūs** sometimes goes with a genitive **-ōris**, sometimes with a genitive **-ēris**, according as its stem is in **-ōs** or **-ūs**.)

Stems in **-er** generally drop **e** in inflexion.

*Examples:* **consūl** (*m.*), stem **consūl-**, a consul;

**mūliēr** (*f.*), stem **mūliēr-**, a woman;

**pātēr** (*m.*), stem **pātēr-**, a father;

**āmōr** (*m.*), stem **āmōr-**, love;

**tempūs** (*n.*), stem **tempōs-**, time;

**ōnūs** (*n.*), stem **ōnūs-**, a burden;

**mōs** (*m.*), stem **mōs-**, a habit;

**crūs** (*n.*), stem **crūs-**, a leg.

*Singular.*

Nom.	cōnsŭl	mŭliēr	pătēr	āmōr
Acc.	consŭl-em	muliēr-em	patr-em	amōr-em
Gen.	consŭl-īs	muliēr-īs	patr-īs	amōr-īs
Dat.	consŭl-ī	muliēr-ī	patr-ī	amōr-ī
Loc.	} consŭl-ē	muliēr-ē	patr-ē	amōr-ē
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	} consŭl-ēs	muliēr-ēs	patr-ēs	amōr-ēs
Acc.				
Gen.	consŭl-um	muliēr-um	patr-um	amōr-um
Dat.	} consŭl-ībŭs	muliēr-ībŭs	patr-ībŭs	amōr-ībŭs
Loc.				
Abl.				

*Singular.*

Nom.	tempŭs	ōnŭs	mōs	crŭs
Acc.	tempŭs	onŭs	mōr-em	crŭs
Gen.	tempōr-īs	onēr-īs	mōr-īs	crŭr-īs
Dat.	tempōr-ī	onēr-ī	mōr-ī	crur-ī
Loc.	} tempōr-ē	onēr-ē	mōr-ē	crur-ē
Abl.				

*Plural.*

Nom.	} tempōr-ā	onēr-ā	mōr-ēs	crŭr-ā
Acc.				
Gen.	tempōr-um	onēr-um	mōr-um	crŭr-um
Dat.	} tempōr-ībŭs	onēr-ībŭs	mōr-ībŭs	crŭr-ībŭs
Loc.				
Abl.				

The principal adjectives with consonant stems are those in -ōs, which express the comparative degree of adjectives.

As *Example*: mēlior (*adj.*), stem mēliōs-, *better*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom.	mēliōr ( <i>m. f.</i> )	mēliūs ( <i>n.</i> )	Nom.	} mēliōrēs ( <i>m. f.</i> )	
Acc.	meliōr-em	melius	Acc.		mēliōrā ( <i>n.</i> )
Gen.	meliōr-is		Gen.	meliōr-um	
Dat.	meliōr-i		Dat.	} meliōr-ibūs	
Loc.	}	meliōr-ē	Loc.		
Abl.			Abl.		

### *Contrast of i Stems and Consonant Stems*

25. The class of *i* stems and the class of consonant stems have, speaking generally, certain marked differences.

1. A very large proportion of the *i* stems have the syllable which precedes the *i* long, sometimes from the length of the vowel, more often from the *i* being preceded by two consonants, as *fini-*, *parti-*.

In the consonant stems the final stem consonant is always preceded by a vowel, and this preceding vowel is generally short, as *dūc-*, *prīncip-*.

2. Further, the *i* stems fall mainly into three divisions, thus—

A. *Substantives and adjectives* of not more than two syllables in the genitive singular, as *nubes*, *grāvis*.

B. *Adjectives* with derivative suffixes, as *aud-aci*, *ag-ili*.

C. *Adjectives* compounded of *noun* stems, as *in-ermi*, *tri-remi*.

The consonant stems fall into three divisions, thus—

A. *Substantives* (few) of not more than two syllables in the genitive singular, as *canis*, *mensis*.

B. *Substantives* with derivative suffixes, as *ima-gon*, *am-or*.  
Also *adjectives* in comparative degree.

C. *Substantives and adjectives* compounded of verbal stems, as *re-duc*, *prae-sed*.

CLASSIFICATION OF *i* STEMS

26. A. The nouns of not more than two syllables in the genitive singular have either—

1. Disyllabic nominative in *-ēs*,
- or 2. Disyllabic nominative in *-īs* (*m. f.*), neuter in *ē*,
- or 3. Disyllabic nominative in *-ēr* (for *ēris*),
- or 4. Monosyllabic nominatives.

1. Stems with disyllabic nominatives in *-ēs*: all feminine, as *prōles*,  
*offspring*; *sēdes*, *seat*.

except *verrēs* (*m.*), *a boar*.

*vātes* (*m. f.*, gen. pl. often *vatum*), *a seer*.

2. Stems with disyllabic nominatives in *-īs*.

(a) Adjectives, *e.g.*—

<i>dulcis</i> sweet	<i>grāvis</i> heavy	<i>lēvis</i> light
<i>omnis</i> all	<i>tristis</i> sad	<i>turpis</i> foul
	etc.	

(β) Substantives.

Common in gender—

<i>anguis</i> (abl. <i>-i</i> rarely)	<i>snake</i>	<i>finis</i> (abl. often <i>-i</i> )	<i>boundary</i>
<i>civis</i>	<i>citizen</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>enemy</i>
<i>testis</i>	<i>witness</i>		

Masculine—

<i>amnis</i> (abl. <i>-i</i> often)	<i>river</i>	<i>mānēs</i> (pl.)	<i>ghosts</i>
<i>collis</i>	<i>hill</i>	<i>orbis</i> (abl. <i>-i</i> sometimes)	<i>a round</i>
<i>crinis</i>	<i>hair</i>	<i>pānis</i> (no gen. pl.)	<i>loaf</i>
<i>ensis</i>	<i>sword</i>	<i>piscis</i>	<i>fish</i>
<i>fascis</i>	<i>bundle</i>	<i>postis</i> (abl. <i>-i</i> often)	<i>doorpost</i>
<i>follis</i>	<i>leather bag</i>	<i>sentēs</i> (pl.)	<i>thorns</i>
<i>fūnis</i>	<i>rope</i>	<i>torquis</i>	<i>collar</i>
<i>fustis</i> (abl. <i>-i</i> often)	<i>club</i>	<i>unguis</i> (abl. <i>-i</i> some- times)	<i>nail, claw</i>
<i>ignis</i> (abl. <i>-i</i> usually)	<i>fire</i>		

## Feminine—

<b>āpis</b> (gen. pl. <b>apum</b> <i>bee</i> sometimes)	<b>puppis</b> (acc. - <b>im</b> or <i>stern of ship</i> - <b>em</b> , abl. - <b>i</b> or - <b>ē</b> )
<b>avis</b> (abl. - <b>i</b> some- <i>bird</i> times)	<b>reestis</b> (acc. - <b>im</b> usu- <i>rope</i> ally)
<b>classis</b> (abl. - <b>i</b> often) <i>fleet, class</i>	<b>sitis</b> (acc. - <b>im</b> , abl. <i>thirst</i> - <b>i</b> , no plur.)
<b>clāvis</b> (acc. - <b>im</b> some- <i>key</i> times)	<b>tigris</b> (also with stem <i>tiger</i> <b>tigrīd-</b> )
<b>messis</b> (acc. - <b>im</b> <i>reaping</i> sometimes)	<b>turris</b> (acc. - <b>im</b> usu- <i>tower</i> ally, abl. - <b>i</b> often) and others.
<b>nāvis</b> (acc. - <b>im</b> , abl. <i>ship</i> - <b>i</b> often)	

## Neuter—

<b>māre</b> (plural only nom. acc.)	<i>sea</i>
<b>mille</b> (indecl. in sing.)	<i>thousand</i>
<b>rēte</b> (abl. sometimes <b>rētē</b> )	<i>a net</i>

3. Stems with disyllabic nominatives in -**ēr**—

<b>imber</b> ( <i>m.</i> abl. - <b>i</b> often) <i>shower</i>	<b>venter</b> ( <i>m.</i> ) <i>belly</i>
<b>linter</b> ( <i>f.</i> usually) <i>boat</i>	<b>ūter</b> ( <i>m.</i> ) <i>skin bag</i>

## 4. Stems with monosyllabic nominatives—

Almost all have a long syllable, usually formed by two consonants, preceding the *i*, *e.g.*—

<b>arx</b> (gen. <b>arcis</b> )	<i>a citadel</i>	<b>lux</b> (gen. <b>lūcis</b> )	<i>light</i>
<b>urbs</b> (gen. <b>urbis</b> )	<i>a city</i>	<b>plebs</b> (gen. <b>plēbis</b> )	<i>the common people</i>

All are feminine except—

## Masculines—

<b>dens</b> (gen. <b>dentis</b> )	<i>a tooth</i>	<b>mons</b> (gen. <b>montis</b> )	<i>mountain</i>
<b>fons</b> (gen. <b>fontis</b> )	<i>fount</i>	<b>mūs</b> (gen. <b>mūris</b> )	<i>mouse</i>
<b>mās</b> (gen. pl. <b>mārum</b> sometimes)	<i>male</i>	<b>pons</b> (gen. <b>pontis</b> )	<i>bridge</i>

## Neuters—

<b>lac</b> (gen. <b>lactis</b> , no plur.) <i>milk</i>	<b>plūs</b> (gen. <b>plūris</b> ) <i>more</i> plur. <b>plūres</b> , <i>m. f.</i> plura, <i>n.</i>
--	---

Notice also—

**nix** (*f.*) (gen. **nīvis**, stem **nigvi-**), *snow* (no gen. pl.)  
**vis** (*f.*), *force*, thus declined—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<b>vis</b>	<b>vīrēs</b>
Acc.	<b>vim</b>	<b>vīres</b>
Gen.	<b>vis</b> (rare)	<b>vīrium</b>
Dat.	<b>?</b>	<b>vīrībus</b>
Abl.	<b>vi</b>	<b>vīrībus</b>

## 27. B. Adjectives with derivative suffixes.

With long penult—

-āci, -ōci, -trici, as **audax**, *bold*; **ātrox**, *cruel*; **victrix**, *conquering*.  
 -āti, -īti, as **nostrās**, *of our country*; **penātes** (pl.), *gods of our home*.  
 -āli, -ūli, -ēli, -īli, as **aequālis**, *equal*; **tribūlis**, *of a tribe*; **crūdēlis**, *cruel*; **hostilis**, *of an enemy*.  
 -āri, as **familiāris**, *intimate*.

(Neuter substantives usually drop the *e* in the nom. singular: as **ānimāl**, *an animal*; **lāqueār**, *a ceiling*.)

-anti, -enti, present participles, as **amans**, *loving*; **serpens**, *crawling*.

-ensi, as **fōrensīs**, *of the forum*.

-esti, as **agrestis**, *of the fields*; **caelestis**, *of heaven*.

With short penult—

-ili, as **āgilīs**, *active*; **fācilīs**, *easy*.

-bri, -cri, -stri (for **bēri**, etc.), as **cēlēber**, *crowded*; **ālācēr**, *alert*; **ēquestēr**, *on horseback*.

## 28. C. Adjectives compounded of noun stems, as **īnermīs**, *unarmed*; **expers**, *without share*; **īsignīs**, *distinguished*.

D. A few others, as **cōhors**, *a troop*; **īndōles**, *native disposition*: and adjectives like **hīlārīs**, *cheerful*; **īnānīs**, *empty*; **fēlix**, *happy*; **cēlēr**, *swift*; **mēmōr**, *mindful*; **vīridīs**, *green*; **tērēs**, *round*; and a few others.

## CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANT STEMS

## 29. A. Substantives disyllabic in genitive—

- (a) with disyllabic nom. : *cānis* (*m. f.*), *dog*.  
*sēnex* (*gen. sēnis*), *old man* ; *mensis* (*m.*), *month* (*gen. pl. sometimes mensium*) ; *frātēr*, *brother* ; *mātēr*, *mother* ; *pātēr*, *father*.  
 (b) with monosyllabic nom.—

*Masculine.*

<i>dux</i>	<i>dūcis</i>	<i>leader</i>	<i>lar</i>	<i>lāris</i>	<i>household</i>
<i>grex</i>	<i>grēgis</i>	<i>flock</i>	<i>fūr</i>	<i>fūris</i>	<i>thief</i> [ <i>god</i> ]
<i>rex</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>king</i>	<i>flōs</i>	<i>flōris</i>	<i>flower</i>
<i>pēs</i>	<i>pēdis</i>	<i>foot</i>	<i>mōs</i>	<i>mōris</i>	<i>manner</i>
<i>praes</i>	<i>praedis</i>	<i>surety</i>	<i>rōs</i>	<i>rōris</i>	<i>dew</i>
<i>vās</i>	<i>vādis</i>	<i>bail</i>			

*sol*, *sōlis*, *sun*, and *sal*, *sālis*, *salt*, have no *gen. pl.*

*Feminine.*

<i>ops</i>	<i>ōpis</i>	<i>help</i>	<i>crux</i>	<i>crūcis</i>	<i>cross</i>
<i>nux</i>	<i>nūcis</i>	<i>nut</i>	<i>nex</i>	<i>nēcis</i>	<i>murder</i>
<i>prēcem</i> (no <i>nom. s.</i> )	<i>prayer</i>		<i>vīcem</i>	(no <i>nom. s.</i> )	<i>change</i>

*Neuter.*

<i>aes</i>	<i>aeris</i>	<i>bronze</i>	<i>crūs</i>	<i>crūris</i>	<i>leg</i>
<i>ōs</i>	<i>ōris</i>	<i>mouth</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>jūris</i>	<i>law</i>

*ōs*, *bone*, has *nom. pl. ossa*, *gen. ossium*.

The following have no *gen. plural*—

<i>ōr</i>	<i>cordis</i>	<i>heart</i>	<i>vēr</i>	<i>vēris</i>	<i>spring</i>
<i>mēl</i>	<i>mellis</i>	<i>honey</i>	<i>rūs</i>	<i>rūris</i>	<i>country</i>
<i>far</i>	<i>farris</i>	<i>spelt</i>	<i>tūs</i>	<i>tūris</i>	<i>incense</i>

## 30. B. Derivative substantives and a few adjectives.

Masculine with stems in *ec*, *et*, *ōn* (except verbal subst. in *iōn*), *ōr* or *ōs*—

As—vortex	vorticis	<i>whirl</i>	carbo	carbōnis	<i>coal</i>
ābles	ābiētis	<i>fir</i>	histrio	histriōnis	<i>actor</i>
limēs	limitis	<i>boundary</i>	amor	amōris	<i>love</i>
			hōnor	honōris	<i>honour</i>

Also (masculine)—

fornix	fornicis	<i>vault</i>	cāro	carnis	<i>flesh</i>
lāpis	lāpidis	<i>pebble</i>	nēpos	nēpōtis	<i>grandson</i>
turbo	turbīnis	<i>whirl</i>	pecten	pectinis	<i>comb</i>
margo	marginis	<i>brink</i>	sanguis	sanguinis	<i>blood</i>
cardo	cardinis	<i>hinge</i>	cīnis	cīnēris	<i>ash</i>
ordo	ordinis	<i>a row</i>	pulvis	pulvērīs	<i>dust</i>

Feminine in *īc*, *īd*, *gōn*, *dōn*, *īc*, *tāt*, *tūt*, and verbals in *lōn*—

As—cālix	cālicis	<i>cup</i>	cervix	cervicis	<i>neck</i>
cuspis	cuspidis	<i>spear-point</i>	rādix	radicis	<i>root</i>
virgo	virginis	<i>girl</i>	civitas	civitātis	<i>city</i>
fortitudo	fortitū- dinis	<i>courage</i>	vōluptas	vōluptātis	<i>plea- [sure]</i>
lēgio	legiōnis	<i>a body of sol- diers</i>	juventus	juventūtis	<i>youth</i>
rātio	rātiōnis	<i>reckoning</i>	virtūs	virtūtis	<i>manliness</i>

Neuter in *-mēn*, *-ōr*, *-ūr*, *-ōs* (*-ōris*), *-ūs* (*-ēris*)—

agmen	agminis	<i>drove, troop</i>	ēbur	ēbōris	<i>ivory</i>
carmen	carminis	<i>song</i>	fēmūr	fēmōris	<i>thigh</i>
nōmēn	nōminis	<i>name</i>	īter	ītīnēris	<i>journey</i>
aequor	aequōris	<i>level</i>	cadāver	cadāvēris	<i>corpse</i>
fulgur	fulgūris	<i>lightning</i>	foedus	foedōris	<i>treaty</i>
corpus	corpōris	<i>body</i>	gēnus	gēnēris	<i>a kind</i>
litus	litōris	<i>shore</i>	mūnus	mūnēris	<i>gift</i>
			ōpus	ōpēris	<i>work</i>

31. C. Substantives and Adjectives compounded of Verb stems—

rēdux	rēducis	(adj.) <i>bringing back</i>	obsēs	obsidis	<i>hostage</i>
compos	compōtis	(adj.) <i>having power</i>	praesēs	praesidis	<i>president</i>
princeps	principis	(adj.) <i>chief</i>	cōmēs	cōmitis	<i>companion</i>
jūdex	judicis	<i>judge</i>	mīlēs	mīlitis	<i>soldier</i>
artifex	artificis	<i>skilled maker</i>	ēquēs	ēquitis	<i>horseman</i>



## D. Also—

<i>custōs</i> (m. f.)	<i>custōdis</i>	<i>keeper</i>	<i>mercēs</i> (f.)	<i>mercēdis</i>	<i>hire</i>
<i>hērēs</i> (m. f.)	<i>hērēdis</i>	<i>heir</i>	<i>pālus</i> (f.)	<i>pālūdis</i>	<i>a marsh</i>
<i>sācerdos</i> (m.)	<i>sacerdōtis</i>	<i>priest</i>	<i>quiēs</i> (f.)	<i>quiētis</i>	<i>rest</i>
<i>cīnis</i> (m.)	<i>cīnēris</i>	<i>ash</i>	<i>tellūs</i> (f.)	<i>tellūris</i>	<i>the earth</i>
<i>pulvis</i> (m.)	<i>pulvērīs</i>	<i>dust</i>			

32. *Note.*—Many Greek words, especially proper names, used in Latin retain some of the Greek case-endings. This is most frequent in the poets. Thus we find—

## 1. Stems in a :

Nom.	<i>Prūsīā</i> or <i>Prūsīās</i>	<i>Atrīdā</i> or <i>Atrīdēs</i>	<i>Circā</i> or <i>Circē</i>
Voc.	<i>Prusīā</i> or <i>Prusīā</i>	<i>Atrīdā</i> or <i>Atrīdē</i>	<i>Circā</i> or <i>Circē</i>
Acc.	<i>Prusiam</i> or <i>Prusīān</i>	<i>Atrīdam</i> or <i>Atrīdēn</i>	<i>Circam</i> or <i>Circēn</i>
Gen.	<i>Prusiae</i>	<i>Atridae</i>	<i>Circae</i> or <i>Circēs</i>
Dat.	<i>Prusiae</i>	<i>Atridae</i>	<i>Circae</i>
Abl.	<i>Prusīā</i>	<i>Atrīdā</i>	<i>Circā</i> or <i>Circē</i>

## 2. Stems in o :

Nom.	<i>Epīrus</i> or <i>Epīrōs</i>
Voc.	<i>Epīrē</i>
Acc.	<i>Epīrum</i> or <i>Epīrōn</i>
Gen.	} <i>Epīri</i>
Loc.	
Dat.	} <i>Epīro</i>
Abl.	

## 3. Stems in i or consonant :

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
Nom.	} <i>tigrīs</i>	<i>tigres</i>	<i>Phyllīs</i>
Voc.			<i>Phyllī</i>
Acc.	<i>tigrim</i> or <i>tigrin</i>	<i>tigrēs</i> or <i>tigrīdās</i>	<i>Phyllīdā</i>
Gen.	<i>tigris</i> or <i>tigrīdos</i>	<i>tigrīum</i>	<i>Phyllīdis</i> or <i>Phyllīdōs</i>
Dat.	<i>tigri</i> or <i>tigrīdi</i>	<i>tigrībus</i>	<i>Phyllīdi</i>
Abl.	<i>tigre</i> or <i>tigrīde</i>	<i>tigrībus</i>	<i>Phyllīdē</i>

In such words there are many irregularities.

## PRONOMINAL AND SOME OTHER ADJECTIVES

33. Some adjectives have the genitive singular ending in *-ius*, the dative in *-ī*, alike for all genders. *E.g. tōtus, whole.*

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	tōtus	tōtā	} tōtum
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	
Gen.	tōtius in all genders		
Loc.	} tōtī in all genders		
Dat.			
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

*Plural.*

Nom.	tōtī	tōtae	} tōtā
Acc.	tōtōs	tōtās	
Gen.	tōtōrum	tōtārum	tōtōrum
Loc.	} tōtis in all genders		
Dat.			
Abl.			

Similarly are declined *ūnus, one*; *ullus, any*; *nullus, none*; *sōlus, alone*.

So *ipse* (in old language *ipsus*), *ipsa, ipsum* has gen. *ipsius*, dat. *ipsi* for all genders.

				Genitive.	Dative.
alter	altēra	altērum	one of two	alterius	alteri
ūtēr	utra	utrum	which of two	utrius	utri
neuter	neutra	neutrum	neither	neutrius	neutri

34. A few other pronominal adjectives are declined in the same way except that they have **d** instead of **m** for the last letter of the neuter nom. and acc. singular. Thus—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<b>ālius</b> <i>other</i>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliūd</b>
Acc.	<b>alium</b>	<b>aliam</b>	<b>aliūd</b>
Gen.	<b>ālius</b> in all genders		
Dat.	<b>alii</b> in all genders		
Loc. }	<b>alio</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>alio</b>
Abl. }			
Nom.	<b>ille</b> <i>that</i>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illūd</b>
Acc.	<b>illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illūd</b>
Gen.	<b>illius</b> or <b>illius</b> in all genders		
Dat.	<b>illi</b> in all genders		
Loc. }	<b>illo</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illo</b>
Abl. }			

So **iste**, *that of yours*, **ista**, **istud**. The plural is in all like **totus**.

The demonstrative particle **cē** was sometimes appended to those cases of **ille** and **iste** which end in **s** (*e.g.* **illosce**), and frequently in an abridged form (**c**) to the others (except gen. plural). *E.g.* Dat. Loc. **illīc**. The neuters **illūd**, **istud** become **illuc**, **istuc**.

35. **hic**, *this*, is declined as follows—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<b>hīc</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>
Acc.	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>
Gen.	<b>huius</b> (or <b>hujus</b> ) in all genders		
Loc.	<b>hīc</b> (adverb)		
Dat.	<b>huic</b> in all genders		
Abl.	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>

*Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
Acc.	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
Gen.	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
Loc.	} <b>hīs</b> in all genders		
Dat.			
Abl.			

The fuller forms **hosce**, **hasce**, **hulusce** are found in Cicero. **Haec** is rarely found for nom. fem. plur. Plautus has also **hice** (for **hic**), etc.

36. *Is, that*, is thus declined—*Singular.*

Nom.	<b>is</b>	<b>eā</b>	<b>id</b>
Acc.	<b>eum</b>	<b>eam</b>	<b>id</b>
Gen.	<b>eius</b> ( <b>ejus</b> ) in all genders		
Loc.	<b>ibi</b> (adverb)		
Dat.	<b>eī</b> in all genders		
Abl.	<b>eō</b>	<b>eā</b>	<b>eō</b>

*Plural.*

Nom.	<b>ēī</b> or <b>ii</b>	<b>eae</b>	<b>eā</b>
Acc.	<b>eōs</b>	<b>eās</b>	<b>eā</b>
Gen.	<b>eōrum</b>	<b>eārum</b>	<b>eōrum</b>
Loc.	} <b>ēīs</b> or <b>iīs</b> in all genders		
Dat.			
Abl.			

**i** and **is** are sometimes written for **ii**, **iīs**. **ībūs**, dat. abl. plur., also occurs rarely.

**-pse** is sometimes appended, as **eumpse**, **eāpse**.

37. *Idem* (for *is-dem*) is thus declined—

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
Acc.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
Gen.	<i>eiusdem</i> ( <i>ejusdem</i> ) in all genders		
Loc.	<i>ībīdem</i>		
Dat.	<i>eīdem</i> in all genders		
Abl.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

*Plural.*

Nom.	<i>eīdem</i> or <i>īdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
Acc.	<i>eosdem</i>	<i>easdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>
Gen.	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
Loc.	} <i>eisdem</i> or <i>īsdem</i> in all genders		
Dat.			
Abl.			

38. *Qui*, *who*, *which*, *what*, *any*, relative, interrogative, and indefinite pronoun, is thus declined—

*Singular.*

Nom.	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>
Acc.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>
Gen.	<i>cuius</i> ( <i>cujus</i> ) in all genders		
Dat.	<i>cui</i> in all genders		
Abl.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>

*Plural.*

Nom.	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
Acc.	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
Gen.	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
Dat.	} <i>quībus</i> in all genders		
Abl.			

As ablatives of all genders, **qui** in sing., **quīs** in plural, are sometimes used.

The genitive **cuius** is occasionally treated as an adjective and declined **cuiā**, **cuium**, etc.

As an indefinite pronoun, **quā** is more common than **quae** in nom. sing. fem. and neut. plural.

As indefinite and interrogative pronouns, **quīs** (*m. f.*), **quid** (*n.*) are generally used for **qui**, **quod**, when not in agreement with a substantive.

### 39. Similar are the compound pronouns—

Adjectives.			Substantives.		
<b>āliqui</b>	<b>āliquā</b>	<b>āliquōd</b>	<i>some</i>	<b>aliquis</b>	<b>aliquid</b>
<b>ecqui</b>	<b>ecquā</b> or <b>ecquae</b>	<b>ecquōd</b>	<i>any?</i>	<b>ecquis</b>	<b>ecquid</b>
<b>quīnam</b>	<b>quaenam</b>	<b>quodnam</b>	<i>what?</i>	<b>quis-</b> <b>nam</b>	<b>quid-</b> <b>nam</b>
<b>quīdam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quoddam</b>	<i>a certain one</i>		
<b>quīcun-</b> <b>que</b>	<b>quaecun-</b> <b>que</b>	<b>quodcun-</b> <b>que</b>	<i>whatsoever</i>		
<b>quīlibēt</b>	<b>quaelibet</b>	<b>quodlibet</b>	<i>any you like</i>		
<b>quīvis</b>	<b>quaevīs</b>	<b>quodvīs</b>	<i>any you will</i>		

Also like **quis**, **quid**—

**quisquis** **quidquid** or **quicquid** *whatsoever*  
**quisquam** **quidquam** or **quicquam** *any at all*

And partly like **quis**, partly like **qui**—

**quispiam** **quaepiam** **quodpiam** *some*  
**quisque** **quaeque** **quodque** *each*

## PECULIAR INFLEXIONS OF CERTAIN PRONOUNS

### *Personal Pronouns*

40. The substantives called *personal pronouns* are very peculiar in their inflexions, nor are all the cases formed from the same stem.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Sing. and Plural.</i>
	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person (reflexive).
Nom.	<b>ĕgo</b>	<b>tŭ</b>	no nom.
Acc.	<b>mĕ</b>	<b>tĕ</b>	<b>sĕ</b>
Gen.	See below		
Dat.	<b>mīhī</b>	<b>tībi</b>	<b>sībi</b>
Abl.	<b>mĕ</b>	<b>tĕ</b>	<b>sĕ</b>

	<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	}	<b>nōs</b> <b>vōs</b>
Acc.		
Gen.		<b>nostrum</b> <b>vostrum</b> or <b>vestrum</b>
Dat.	}	
Abl.		<b>nōbīs</b> <b>vōbīs</b>

**SINGULAR.** *Accusative and ablative.*—**Sĕsĕ** was frequently used for **sĕ**; **tĕtĕ** rarely for **tĕ**.

The forms **mĕd** and **tĕd** occur as accusatives and ablatives in Plautus.

*Genitive.*—As possessive genitive the adjectives **meus**, *my, mine*; **tuus**, *thy, thine*; **suus**, *his (her) own*, were used: as **meus liber**, *my book*; **mea filia**, *my daughter*; **meum opus**, *my work*.

As objective genitive the gen. sing. neut. of the same is used, viz. **mei** (*of my being*), **tui**, **sui**.

**PLURAL.** *Genitive.*—As possessive genitive the adjectives **noster** and **vester** (**voster**) and **suus** were used.

As objective genitives **nostri**, **vestri**, **sui**.

As partitive genitives **nostrum**, **vestrum**, **suorum**.

To all cases (except *tu* nom.) of the substantive pronouns the particle **-mĕt** is sometimes added. For **tu**, **tutĕ** or **tutimĕt** is found.

The adjectives often have in the ablative case **-met** or **-pte** appended, e.g. **meōpte**, **suāmet**; rarely in the gen. sing., e.g. **tuipte**, and acc. plur., e.g. **suosmet**, **suāmet**.

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE

41. From many adjectives two derivative adjectives are formed in order to denote the degree of the quality expressed by them. The simple form is called the *positive*. The *comparative* expresses a higher degree of the quality in a comparison of two things or persons. The *superlative* expresses the highest degree in a comparison of more than two things or persons, as *dūrus*, *hard*; *dūrior*, *harder*; *dūrissimus*, *hardest*.

The comparative is sometimes used to express that the quality is possessed in *too high* a degree.

The superlative is sometimes used to express that the quality is possessed in a *very high* degree.

*Ordinary Formation of Comparative and Superlative*

42. These derivative adjectives are formed from the positive as follows—

1. The stem of the comparative is formed by adding *iōs* to the last consonant of the stem, *i.e.* by changing the inflexion *i* or *is* of the genitive into *iōs*. The *s* is changed into *r* before vowels and in the nom. sing. masc. and fem. (see § 24). In the neuter nom. and acc. sing. *iōs* becomes *iūs*.

2. The stem of the superlative is formed by adding *issimo* or *issima* to the last consonant of the stem. Thus—

	Genitive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>dūr-us</i> , <i>hard</i>	<i>dūr-i</i>	<i>dūr-ior</i>	<i>dūr-issimus</i>
<i>trist-is</i> , <i>sad</i>	<i>trist-is</i>	<i>trist-ior</i>	<i>trist-issimus</i>
<i>felix</i> ( <i>felic-s</i> ), <i>happy</i>	<i>felic-is</i>	<i>felic-ior</i>	<i>felic-issimus</i>

Some adjectives form their superlative by doubling the last consonant of the stem and adding *imus*. These are—

(a) Adjectives with stems ending in *ēro* or *eri*, the *e* being omitted or retained in the comparative as in the inflexions of the positive.



**pulcher**, *fair*, comp. **pulchr-ior**, superl. **pulcher-rīmus**.

So **nīger**, *black*; **pīger**, *slothful*; **rūber**, *red*; **taeter**, *foul*; **vāfer**, *cunning*; **ācer**, *sharp*; **cēlēber**, *famous*; **sālūber**, *healthful*.

**asper**, *rough*

**aspērior**

**asperrīmus**

So **cēler**, *swift*; **dexter**, *right* (also rarely superl. **dextī-mus**); **liber**, *free*; **mīser**, *wretched*; **pauper**, *poor*; **tēner**, *tender*; **ūber**, *abundant*. Also

**vētus**, *old*

no comp.

**vēterrimus**

**prospērus**, *prosperous*

**prosperrīmus**

(b) The following adjectives whose last stem consonant is l: **fācīlis**, *easy*; **sīmīlis**, *like*; **difficīlis**, *difficult*; **dissīmīlis**, *unlike*; **grācīlis**, *thin, slender*; **humīlis**, *low*; as **facil-is**, **fācil-līmus**.

### *Irregular or Defective Adjectives*

(besides those named above, 2, a).

43. The following are either deficient in the positive degree or form their comparative and superlative irregularly or from a different stem—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>bōnus</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>mēllor</b>	<b>optīmus</b>
<b>mālus</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>pējor</b>	<b>pessīmus</b>
<b>magnus</b> , <i>great</i>	<b>mājor</b>	<b>maxīmus</b>
<b>parvus</b> , <i>small</i>	<b>mīnor</b>	<b>mīnīmus</b>
<b>multus</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>plūs</b> (neut.)	<b>plūrīmus</b>
<b>nēquam</b> (indecl.), <i>wicked</i>	<b>nēquior</b>	<b>nēquissīmus</b>
<b>dīves</b> }	<b>dīvītor</b>	<b>dīvītissīmus</b> (Cic.)
<b>dīs</b> } <i>rich</i>	<b>dītior</b>	<b>dītissīmus</b> (Verg.)
<b>senex</b> , <i>old</i>	<b>sēnior</b>	( <b>nātu maxīmus</b> )
<b>jūvēnis</b> , <i>young</i>	<b>jūnior</b>	( <b>nātu mīnīmus</b> )
<b>pōtis</b> , <b>pōtē</b> (indecl.), <i>able</i> , <i>possible</i>	<b>pōtior</b> , <i>better</i>	<b>pōtissīmus</b>
(no positive)	<b>ōclor</b> , <i>swifter</i>	<b>ōcissīmus</b>
<b>frūgi</b> (indecl.), <i>useful</i>	<b>frūgālīor</b>	<b>frūgālissīmus</b>

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>ēgens</b> } <i>needy</i> <b>ēgēnus</b> }	<b>egentior</b>	<b>egentissimus</b>
<b>bēnēvōlus</b> , <i>well-wishing</i>	<b>benevolentior</b>	<b>benevolentissimus</b>
<b>mālēdīcus</b> , <i>evil-speaking</i>	<b>maledicentior</b>	<b>maledicentissimus</b>
<b>magnīfīcus</b> , <i>splendid</i>	<b>magnificentior</b>	<b>magnificentissimus</b>
<b>cītrā</b> (adv.), <i>on this side</i>	<b>cītērior</b>	<b>cītīmus</b>
<b>de</b> (prep.), <i>down from</i>	<b>dētērior</b> , <i>less good</i>	<b>dētērrīmus</b>
<b>extrā</b> (adv.), <b>externus</b> (adj.), <i>outside</i>	<b>extērior</b>	{ <b>extrēmus</b> <b>extīmus</b>
<b>infērā</b> (adv.), <b>infēr</b> <sup>1</sup> (adj.), <i>low</i>	<b>infērior</b>	<b>infīmus</b> , <b>īmus</b>
<b>intrā</b> (adv.), <i>within</i>	<b>intērior</b>	<b>intīmus</b>
<b>post</b> , <b>postērus</b> , <i>next</i> (in { time) {	<b>postērior</b> , <i>hinder, later</i>	{ <b>postrēmus</b> <b>postūmus</b>
<b>prae</b> (prep.), <i>before</i>	<b>prior</b>	<b>primus</b>
<b>prōpe</b> (adv.), <i>near</i>	<b>prōpior</b>	<b>proxīmus</b>
<b>suprā</b> (adv.), <b>sūpēr</b> <sup>1</sup> (adj.), <i>high</i>	<b>sūpērior</b>	{ <b>suprēmus</b> <i>highest</i> , <i>last</i> (in time) <b>summus</b>
<b>ultrā</b> (adv.), <i>beyond</i>	<b>ultērior</b>	<b>ultīmus</b> , <i>farthest</i>

Adjectives used only in the positive—

Many adjectives, which express a state or quality which does not readily admit the idea of a higher or lower degree, *e.g. material* (*e.g. aureus*, *golden*), *time* (*e.g. nocturnus*, *nightly*), *special relationship* (*e.g. paternus*, *fatherly*), have no comparative or superlative. In some others they are wanting without any such apparent reason. If a comparison is required in such adjectives, the defect is supplied by adding **māgis** and **maxime**. Thus **magis mirus**, *more wonderful*; **maxime mirus**, *most wonderful*.

## NUMERALS

44. *Cardinal Numerals* answer the question “how many?” (quot). *Ordinal Numerals* answer the question “which in numerical order?” (quōtus). *Distributive Numerals* answer the question “how many each, or, at each time?” (quotēni). *Numeral Adverbs* answer the question “how many times?” (quotiens).

<sup>1</sup> Chiefly used in plural: **infēri**, *the beings below*; **sūpēri**, *the beings above*; **infērā**, *the places below*; **sūpērā**, *the places above*.

1. *List of*

ARABIC SIGNS.	ROMAN SIGNS.	CARDINAL (adjectives).
1	I.	<i>ûnus, a, um</i>
2	II.	<i>duo, ae, o</i>
3	III.	<i>tres, tria</i>
4	III. or IV.	<i>quattuor</i>
5	V.	<i>quinque</i>
6	VI.	<i>sex</i>
7	VII.	<i>septem</i>
8	VIII. or IIX.	<i>octo</i>
9	VIII. or IX.	<i>nôvem</i>
10	X.	<i>dêcem</i>
11	XI.	<i>undêcim</i>
12	XII.	<i>duodêcim</i>
13	XIII.	<i>tredêcim</i>
14	XIII. or XIV.	<i>quattuordêcim</i>
15	XV.	<i>quindêcim</i>
16	XVI.	<i>sêdêcim</i>
17	XVII.	<i>septemdêcim</i>
18	XVIII. or XIII.	<i>duôdêvigintî</i>
19	XVIII. or XIX.	<i>undêvigintî</i>
20	XX.	<i>vigintî</i>
21	XXI.	<i>ûnus et vigintî</i>
22	XXII.	<i>duo et vigintî</i>
28	XXVIII. or XXIII.	<i>duodêtriginta</i>
29	XXVIII. or XXIX.	<i>undêtriginta</i>
30	XXX.	<i>trigintâ</i>
40	XXXX. or XL.	<i>quadrâginta</i>
50	L.	<i>quinqûâginta</i>
60	LX.	<i>sexâginta</i>
70	LXX.	<i>septuâginta,</i>

*Numerals*

ORDINAL (all declinable adjectives).	DISTRIBUTIVE (all declinable adjectives plural).	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
{ <i>primus, a, um</i>	{ <i>singŭli, ae, a</i>	<i>sēmēl</i>
{ <i>prior, first of two</i>		
{ <i>sēcundus</i>	{ <i>binī (for duini)</i>	<i>bīs (for duis)</i>
{ <i>alter</i>		
<i>tertius</i>	<i>ternī (or trīnī)</i>	<i>tēr</i>
<i>quartus</i>	<i>quāternī</i>	<i>quātēr</i>
<i>quintus</i>	<i>quīnī</i>	<i>quinq̄uens</i>
<i>sextus</i>	<i>sēnī</i>	<i>sexiens</i>
<i>septim̄us</i>	<i>septēnī</i>	<i>septiens</i>
<i>octāvus</i>	<i>octōnī</i>	<i>octiens</i>
<i>nōnus</i>	<i>nōvēnī</i>	<i>nōviens</i>
<i>dēcim̄us</i>	<i>dēnī</i>	<i>dēcimens</i>
<i>undēcim̄us</i>	<i>undēnī</i>	<i>undēcimens</i>
<i>duodēcim̄us</i>	<i>dūōdēnī</i>	<i>duodēcimens</i>
<i>tertius decim̄us</i>	<i>ternī denī</i>	<i>terdēcimens</i>
<i>quartus decim̄us</i>	<i>quāternī dēnī</i>	<i>quāterdēcimens</i>
<i>quintus decim̄us</i>	<i>quīnī dēnī</i>	<i>quindēcimens</i>
<i>sextus decim̄us</i>	<i>sēnī dēnī</i>	<i>sēdēcimens</i>
<i>septim̄us decim̄us</i>	<i>septēnī denī</i>	<i>septiens dēcimens</i>
<i>duodēvicēnsim̄us</i>	<i>dūōdēvicēnī</i>	<i>duodēvicimens (?)</i>
<i>undēvicēnsim̄us</i>	<i>undēvicēnī</i>	<i>undēvicimens (?)</i>
<i>vicēnsim̄us</i>	<i>vicēnī</i>	<i>vicimens</i>
<i>unus (more rarely prī-</i>	<i>vicēnī singuli</i>	<i>semel et vicimens</i>
<i>mus) et vicēnsim̄us</i>		
<i>alter et vicēnsim̄us</i>	<i>vicēnī binī</i>	<i>bis et vicimens</i>
<i>duodetricēnsim̄us</i>	<i>duodetricēnī</i>	<i>duodetricimens</i>
<i>undetricēnsim̄us</i>	<i>undetricēnī</i>	<i>undetricimens (?)</i>
<i>tricēnsim̄us</i>	<i>tricēnī</i>	<i>triciens</i>
<i>quadrāgēnsim̄us</i>	<i>quadrāgēnī</i>	<i>quadragens</i>
<i>quinq̄uagēnsim̄us</i>	<i>quinq̄uāgēnī</i>	<i>quinq̄uagens</i>
<i>sexāgēnsim̄us</i>	<i>sexāgēnī</i>	<i>sexagens</i>
<i>septuāgēnsim̄us</i>	<i>septuāgēnī</i>	<i>septuagens</i>

ARABIC SIGNS.	ROMAN SIGNS.	CARDINAL (adjectives).
80	LXXX. or XXC.	octōginta
90	LXXXX. or XC.	nōnāginta
98	XCVIII. or IIC.	octo et nonaginta
99	XCIX. or IC.	undecentum
100	C.	centum
101	CI.	centum et unus
124	CXXIII. or CXXIV.	centum viginti quat- tuor
200	CC.	dūcenti, <i>ae, a</i>
230	CCXXX.	ducenti ( <i>ae, a</i> ) triginta
300	CCC.	trēcenti, <i>ae, a</i>
400	CCCC.	quādringenti, <i>ae, a</i>
500	ID. or D.	quingenti, <i>ae, a</i>
600	IOC.	sescenti, <i>ae, a</i>
700	IOCC.	septingenti, <i>ae, a</i>
800	IOCCC.	octingenti, <i>ae, a</i>
900	IOCCCC.	nongenti, <i>ae, a</i>
1000	CID. or M.	mille
1235	CIOCCXXXV	mille ducenti ( <i>ae, a</i> ) triginta quinque
2000	CICID.	duo millia
4000	CICIDCICID.	quattuor millia
5000	IOO.	quinque millia
6000	IOOCID.	sex millia
10,000	CCID.	decem millia
20,000	CCIDCCID.	viginti millia
50,000	IOOO.	quinquāginta millia
100,000	CCCID.	centum millia

ORDINAL (all declinable adjectives).	DISTRIBUTIVE (all declinable adjectives plural).	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
octogensim <sup>us</sup>	octogeni	octogiens
nonagensim <sup>us</sup>	nonāgeni	nonagiens
duodecentensim <sup>us</sup>	duodecenteni	duodecentiens
undecentensim <sup>us</sup>	undecenteni	undecentiens
centēsim <sup>us</sup>	centeni	centiens
centensim <sup>us</sup> prim <sup>us</sup>	centeni sin- guli	centiens semel
centensim <sup>us</sup> vicensi- mus quart <sup>us</sup>	centeni vicini quaterni	centiens vicini quater
ducentensim <sup>us</sup>	ducenti	ducentiens
ducentensim <sup>us</sup> tri- centensim <sup>us</sup>	ducenti triceni	ducentiens tri- ciens
trecentensim <sup>us</sup>	trēcenti	trēcentiens
quadringsim <sup>us</sup>	quadringeni	quadringsiens
quingentsim <sup>us</sup>	quingeni	quingentsiens
sescentensim <sup>us</sup>	sesceni	sescentiens
septingentsim <sup>us</sup>	septingeni	septingentsiens
octingentsim <sup>us</sup>	octingeni	octingentsiens
nongentsim <sup>us</sup>	nongeni	nongentsiens
millensim <sup>us</sup>	singula millia	milliens
millensim <sup>us</sup> ducent- ensim <sup>us</sup> tricensi- mus quint <sup>us</sup>	singula millia ducenta tri- centa quina	milliens ducent- iens triciciens quinquiens
bis millensim <sup>us</sup>	bina millia	bis milliens
quater millensim <sup>us</sup>	quaterna mil- lia	quater milliens
quinquiens millen- sim <sup>us</sup>	quina millia	quinquiens mil- liens
sexiens millensim <sup>us</sup>	senā millia	sexiens milliens
deciens millensim <sup>us</sup>	denā millia	deciens milliens
viciens millensim <sup>us</sup>	vicena millia	viciens milliens
quinguagens mil- lensim <sup>us</sup>	quingagenā millia	quinguagens milliens
centiens millensim <sup>us</sup>	centena millia	centiens milliens

ARABIC SIGNS.	ROMAN SIGNS.	CARDINAL (adjectives).
500,000	I0000.	quingentā millia
1,000,000	CCCCI0000.	decies centum mil- lia

(a) The earlier form of ordinals in **-imus** ended in **-umus**.

For **-ensimus**, **-esimus** is often found.

*Multiplicative* adjectives are formed with the suffix **-plex**, *-fold*: viz. **simplex**, **sescuplex** (*one and a half fold*), **duplex**, **triplex**, **quadruplex**, **quincuplex**, **septemplex**, **decemplex**, **centuplex**.

Others in **-plus** are generally used in neuter only, to denote a

## 2. Inflections of Numerals

**45. Unus.** For mode of declension see § 33. In the plural it is used only with substantives whose plural denotes a singular, e.g. **unae litterae**, *one epistle*; **unae aedes**, *one house (set of rooms, or of hearths?)*; **uni mores**, *one and the same conduct*; **uni Suevi**, *the single tribe of the Suevi (or the Suevi alone)*.

**Duo.** The masc. and neut. are: nom. acc. **duo**, gen. **duōrum** or **duum**, dat. abl. **duōbus**. For the m. acc. **duos** is also used. The fem. is: nom. **duae**, acc. **duas**, gen. **duārum** or **duum**, dat. abl. **duābus**. In expressions like **duodēcim**, **duodeviginti**, **duoetvicesimus**, **duo** is not varied. **Ambo**, *both*, is similarly declined.

Nom. and acc. **trēs**, n. **triā**, gen. **trium**, dat. and abl. **tribus**.

All the other cardinal numbers up to **centum** are undeclined: so also is **mille** when used as an adjective. As

ORDINAL (all declinable adjectives).	DISTRIBUTIVE (all declinable adjectives plural).	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
quingentiens mil- lensimus	quingena mil- lia	quingentiens mil- liens
deciens centiens millensimus	deciens cen- tena millia	deciens centiens milliens

(b) The later form of numeral adverbs ended in -ies.

magnitude *twice*, etc., *as great* as another. These are *simplus*, *sescuplus*, *duplus*, *triplus*, *quadruplus*, *octuplus*.

Another series is *binārius*, containing *two*, *ternarius*, *quāternarius*, *quinarius*, *sēnarius*, *septenarius*, etc.

a substantive it has a declinable plural *millia* (more correctly spelt *milia*), *millium*, *millibus*: but in the singular is rarely used except in nom. or acc. In expressions like *caesi sunt tria millia trecenti milites*, we must supply *militum* after *millia*. If the name of the thing, etc., numbered precede, it is usually put in the genitive, e.g. *militum* (not *milites*) *tria millia trecenti caesi sunt*.

The other cardinal, and all the ordinal and distributive numbers, are declinable adjectives with *o* stems. The genitive plural of the cardinals and distributives is usually in -um for -orum (cf. § 16); e.g. *multa praesens quingentum nummum aëris* (for *quingentorum nummorum*), *an immediate fine of 500 pounds of copper*; *pueri senum septenumque denum annorum*, *boys of sixteen and seventeen years of age*.



### 3. Order in compounding Numerals

46. In compound numbers, from *thirteen* to *nineteen* inclusive, the smaller is usually prefixed to the larger without *et*, e.g. **septem decem** (or **septemdecim**), **septimus decimus**, **septeni deni**, **septiens deciens**; but in cardinals and ordinals the order is sometimes reversed, and in cardinals *et* is sometimes inserted, especially if the larger come first, e.g. **decem septem**, **decem et septem**, **septem et decem**; **decimus septimus** (Sen.)

From *twenty-one* to *ninety-nine* the rule is that either the larger should precede the smaller number without *et*, or the smaller precede with *et*; so **viginti quattuor**, *twenty-four*, or **quattuor et viginti**, *four and twenty*. From *a hundred and one* upwards the larger number usually comes first either without or (except with distributives) with a conjunction.

### USE OF CLASSES OF NUMERALS

47. The ordinal, not the cardinal, is used in giving the date, e.g. *In the year 1879* is **anno millesimo octingentesimo septuagesimo nono**.

The distributives are used—

(1) To denote that the number belongs to each of several persons or things, e.g. **Caesar et Ariovistus denos comites ad colloquium adduxerunt**, *took ten companions each*.

(2) In expressions of multiplication, e.g.—

<b>bis bina</b>	<i>twice two</i>
<b>ter novenae virgines</b>	<i>thrice nine girls</i>
<b>deciens centena millia</b>	<i>ten times a hundred thousand</i>

In these expressions the distributive numerals, e.g. **deciens centena millia**, do not mean *a million to each person*, but *a hundred thousand taken each of ten times*.

*Every other* is expressed by **alterni**, e.g. **alternis diebus**, *every second day*.

## ADVERBS

48. Adverbs and conjunctions are indeclinable words, chiefly oblique cases of existing or lost words.

The chief pronominal adverbs of place and time and some others will be found in the tables following.

Other adverbs, derived from adjectives and participles, end

(a) in *ō*, or rarely *ō*, as—

*certō*, *certainly*; *cītō*, *quickly*; *mēritō*, *deservedly*; *rārō*, *seldom*; *tūtō*, *safely*; *vērō*, *in truth*; *primō*, *in the first place*; *secundō*, *in the second place*; *postremō*, *lastly*.

(b) in *ē*, as—

*aegrē*, *hardly*; *doctē*, *skilfully*; *doctissimē*, *most skilfully*; *planē*, *quite*; *rectē*, *rightly*; *valdē*, *very*.

(c) in *ē*, as—

*bēnē*, *well*; *mālē*, *badly*; *fācilē*, *easily*; *impūnē*, *with impunity*; *paenē*, *almost*; *rītē*, *duly*; *saepē*, *often*; *fortē*, *by chance*; *quōquē*, *also*.

(d) in *-um*, as—

*primum*, *for the first time*; *it̄erum*, *for the second time*; *tertium*, *for the third time*; *circum*, *round*; *nīmium*, *too much*.

(e) in *-tēr*, especially from *i* stems, as—

*ācrit̄er*, *eagerly*; *br̄evit̄er*, *shortly*; *dūr̄it̄er*, *hardly*; *fr̄ēquent̄er*, *frequently*; *larḡit̄er*, *lavishly*; *sīm̄ilit̄er*, *in like fashion*.

(f) in *-tūs*, denoting *from*, as—

*antiquit̄us*, *from of old*; *fundit̄us*, *from the bottom*; *pēnit̄us*, *from the interior, deeply*.

(g) -tim, chiefly from past participles, as—

**furtim**, stealthily; **partim**, partly; **cursim**, swiftly;  
**sensim**, gradually; **stātim**, immediately; **nōmīnā-**  
**tim**, by name; **paullātim**, little by little.

Other noticeable adverbs are—

**mānē**, in the morning; **noctu**, by night; **hōdie**, to-day;  
**crās**, to-morrow; **hēri**, yesterday; **tempēri**, in good time;  
**nūper**, lately; **quōtannis**, yearly; **semper**, always; **paul-**  
**lisper**, for a little while; **diu**, for long; **dūdum**, lately;  
**dēmum**, at last; **pridem**, some time ago; **extemplo**, at  
once; **mōdō**, only, just now; **itērum**, a second time; **rursus**,  
back again; **item**, likewise; **saltem**, at least; **ētiam**, also;  
**itā**, thus; **ergo**, therefore; **ideo**, on that account; **dēnuō**,  
afresh; **oppidō**, quite; **brēvī**, in few words; **prōfecto**,  
really; **nīmīs**, too much; **sātis**, enough; **vix**, scarcely;  
**fortassis**, fortasse, perchance; **nōn**, not; **immo**, at the  
least, nay rather.

49. The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs of time.

<b>quando</b> { when? when	<b>quamdiū</b> { how long? as long as	<b>quōties</b> { how often? as often as
<b>quom</b> , when	<b>āliquamdiū</b> , for some	<b>tōties</b> , so often
<b>nunc</b> , now	length of time	<b>āliquoties</b> , several times
<b>tunc</b> } then	<b>quousque</b> , till when?	<b>identidem</b> , repeatedly
<b>tum</b> }	<b>adhuc</b> , hitherto	<b>nonnunquam</b> } sometimes,
<b>antehāc</b> , before this		<b>āliquando</b> } i.e. not un-
<b>posthāc</b> , after this		<b>quandōque</b> } frequently
<b>sūbinde</b> , immediately afterwards		<b>interdum</b> , sometimes (i.e.
<b>nondum</b> , not yet		occasionally)
<b>aliās</b> , at another time		<b>unquam</b> , ever (after nega-
<b>intērim</b> } meanwhile		tives, etc.)
<b>intēreā</b> }		<b>usque</b> , ever (of progressive
<b>quondam</b> } sometime, i.e. formerly,		continuance)
<b>olim</b> } or hereafter		

50. The following is a tabular arrangement of certain pronominal adjectives and adverbs which answer to each other, and are therefore called *Correlative*.

<i>Demonstrative.</i>	<i>Relative and Interrogative.</i>	<i>Indefinite Relative.</i>	<i>Indefinite.</i>
is, that	qui, which	quisquis quicunque	aliquis, some quis, any
ut, which of two	uter, which of two	alteruter, one or other of two uterque, whichever of the two	quilibet } any you please, quisvis } any whatever uterque } whichever (of two) uterque } you please quolibet } of any quality quolibet } you please
talis, of that quality, such	qualis { of which quality, as, { of what quality?	qualiscunque, of what quality soever	aliquantus, of some considerable size
tantus, so great	quantus { as great { how great?	quantuscunque, how great soever	quantuslibet } of any size quantusvis } you please aliquantulum, a little (subst.)
tantulus, so small	quantulus { as small { how small?	quantuluscunque, how small soever	aliquot (indecl.), some
tot (indecl.), so many totidem (indecl.), just so many	quot { as many { how many? { how many?	quotcunque quotquot (indecl.)	

Qualiscunque and quantuscunque are also used as simply indefinite (non-relative) pronouns; aliquantus is commonly only used in the neuter (aliquantum, aliquanto), and then as substantive or adverb.

Correlative (pronominal) adverbs.

tam, so	quam, how? as	quamvis } however much quamlibet } you please
totiens, so often	quotiens { as often { how often?	quotienslibet, however often you please
ita, thus, so sic	ut, how, as	aliquoties, sometimes

51. The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs of place.

—ō (= om, accus. ?)	—de, answering to gen. (or abl.) —bī or ī, dat. or loc.	—ā, abl. fem.
quō { whither ?	undē { whence ?	quā { by what way ?
hūc, hither	hinc, hence	hāc, by this way
eō, thither	indē, thence	eā, by that way
istō, isthuc, to your place	istim, istinc, from your place	istāc, by your way
illō, illuc, to that place	illim, illinc, from that place	illāc, by that way (near him)
eōdem, to the same place	indidem, from the same place	eādem, by the same way
utrōque, to both places	utrinque, from both sides	
āliquo, to some place or other	undique, from all sides	āliquā, by some way
	ālicunde, from some place or other	
quōvis { to any place	ubivis { where you please	quāvis { by any way you please
quolibet { you please	ubilibet { anywhere whatever	quolibet { by any way whatever
utrolibet, whithersoever (of two places) you choose		
quōquam, anywhither (in negative, etc., sentences)	usquam, anywhere (in negative, etc., sentences)	aliquā, if by any way
siquō, if anywhither	sicubi, if anywhere	aliā, by another way
ālō, to another place	alibi, elsewhere	quācunque { by whatsoever way
quōcunque { whithersoever	ubique, everywhere	usquequaque, everywhere
quōquō	nusquam, nowhere	quānam, where ?
quonam, whither ?		
ādeo, so far		
quorsum (i.e. { whitherswards ?		
quōversum) { whitherswards		

## INFLEXIONS OF VERBS

52. Latin verbs have inflexions to denote differences of voice, person, number, mood, and tense.

1. There are two *voices*, the Active and the Passive.
2. Two *numbers*, the singular and plural.
3. Three *persons* (first, second, third) in each number. In the Imperative mood there is no form for the first person singular.
4. Three *moods*, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.
5. Six *tenses*, in the Indicative mood, active voice :
  - (a) Three denoting incomplete action ; the Present, Future, and Imperfect.
  - (b) Three denoting completed action ; the Perfect, Completed Future, and Pluperfect.

The Subjunctive has no future. The Imperative has no tense except the present and the future.

Verbs in the passive voice have in the Indicative only three simple tense-forms, those of incomplete action.

For the tenses of complete action in the passive voice participles in combination with certain tenses of the verb of *being* are used.

53. Certain *verbal nouns* are usually treated in connexion with the verb. These are

(a) Two indeclinable substantives, called *Infinitives* (or the Infinitive Mood). They are

The Present infinitive, denoting incomplete action, and

The Perfect, denoting completed action.

(b) Three verbal adjectives, called *Participles*, the Present and Future belonging to the active voice; the Past participle belonging to the passive voice.

(c) A verbal substantive and adjective, called the *Gerund* and *Gerundive*, usually classed, the first with the active, the second with the passive voice.

(d) Two *Supines*, i.e. the accusative and ablative (or dative) of a verbal noun.

The forms of the verb proper are often called collectively the *Finite Verb*; the verbal nouns above named are sometimes called the *Infinite Verb*.

54. Every single word in the Latin (finite) verb is a complete sentence, the verbal stem being used not by itself, but combined with suffixes marking the person and number of the particular form, and sometimes also the tense, mood, and voice.

The principles on which all verbs are inflected are the same. The differences in detail which are found are due chiefly to the nature or ending of the stem.

The inflexions are attached to the stem in the following order: inflexions of *tense*, of *mood*, of *person*, of *number*, of

*voice*. The forms of the present tense, indicative mood, singular number, active voice are the simplest, containing only the verb stem with the sign of person. All other parts of the verb (usually) contain also signs of tense, mood, number, and voice. Of these the signs of *tense* and *mood* are placed *between* the stem and the sign of person, and the inflexions for *number* and *voice* are placed *after* them.

Thus **dāt** is the present tense, indicative mood, third person, singular number, active voice of a verbal stem meaning *give*. It is composed of **dā-** verbal stem, and **t** sign of the third person: and thus is strictly *give-he* (*she, it*), for which originally *give-s* is the English equivalent, but English, having lost its sense of the meaning of the final *s*, now prefixes in addition the pronoun *he* (*she, it*), as a separate word for the like purpose.

**dā-r-ē-m-us** is the first person plural, imperfect tense, subjunctive mood, active voice, of the same stem, **dā-**, *give*. The sound **r** here denotes past time, **ē** the mood of *thought* (instead of *fact*), **m** the speaker himself, **us** the action of others with the speaker. Thus **daremus** analysed is *give-did-in-thought-I-they*. If for **-us** we have **-ur** (**dārēmur**), the speaker and others are passive instead of active.

55. The inflexions of tense may be divided into two classes, viz. those which are common to several tenses or forms, and those which are peculiar to the particular tense.

The inflexions common to several tenses or forms may be referred to three forms of the verbal stem called the Present stem, the Perfect stem, and the Supine stem.

1. The *Present stem* is very often the same as the verbal stem, but not unfrequently is more or less modified.



From this present stem are formed all the tenses and verbal forms which express incomplete action, viz. both in Active and Passive voices—

Indicative Present, Future, Imperfect ;  
Imperative Present, Future ;  
Subjunctive Present, Imperfect ;

also the following verbal forms :

Present Infinitive ; Active and Passive ;  
Present Participle ; Active (none in Passive) ;  
Gerunds and Gerundive.

2. The *Perfect stem* is sometimes identical with the verb stem and with the present stem, but usually is considerably modified. From this perfect stem are formed all the tenses denoting completed action, viz. in the Active voice—

Indicative Perfect, Completed Future, Pluperfect ;  
Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect ;

also the Perfect Infinitive.

3. The *Supine stem* is always a modification of the verbal stem, and from it are formed certain verbal nouns, of which the forms called the supines, the past participle passive, and future participle active are generally treated in connexion with the verb.

The past participle passive is used with certain tenses of the verb of *being* to form the perfect, pluperfect and completed future indicative, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, of the passive voice. (See § 72.)

## EXAMPLES OF THE INFLEXIONS OF VERBS

56. Verbs are as regards their inflexions divided into two principal classes ; those whose stem ends in a consonant and those whose stem ends in a vowel. The former may be called for shortness *consonant-verbs*, the latter *vowel-verbs*.

Vowel-verbs may have a stem ending in *a* or *i*, or *e* or *u*. Of these by far the most numerous are those with stems ending in *ā*, and this class differs most in its inflexions from consonant verbs. It is in the inflexions of tenses formed from the present stem that these differences are mainly found.

First will be given the system of inflected forms of a consonant stem, *rēg-*, *rule*, and of a vowel stem, *āmā-*, *love*.

The English which corresponds most nearly to the Latin forms of the Indicative and Imperative moods is added. The English corresponding to the Subjunctive mood varies so much with the character of the sentence in which it is used, that none can properly be given here.

The quantity of the final syllables is marked as actually used by Latin poets.

57.

## PRESENT STEM

## Active Voice

*Present* ✓

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. 1.	<b>rĕg-o</b>	<i>I am ruling or I rule</i>	<b>rĕg-am</b>
2.	<b>rĕg-is</b>	<i>Thou art ruling or Thou rulest</i>	<b>rĕg-ās</b>
3.	<b>rĕg-it</b>	<i>He is ruling or He rules</i>	<b>rĕg-āt</b>
Plur. 1.	<b>rĕg-im-ūs</b>	<i>We are ruling or We rule</i>	<b>rĕg-ām-ūs</b>
2.	<b>rĕg-it-is</b>	<i>Ye are ruling or Ye rule</i>	<b>rĕg-āt-is</b>
3.	<b>rĕg-unt</b>	<i>They are ruling or They rule</i>	<b>rĕg-ant</b>

*Future* ✓

Sing. 1.	<b>rĕg-am</b>	<i>I shall or will rule</i>
2.	<b>rĕg-ēs</b>	<i>Thou wilt rule</i>
3.	<b>rĕg-ēt</b>	<i>He will rule</i>
Plur. 1.	<b>rĕg-ēm-ūs</b>	<i>We shall or will rule</i>
2.	<b>rĕg-ēt-is</b>	<i>Ye will rule</i>
3.	<b>rĕg-ent</b>	<i>They will rule</i>

*Imperfect* ✓

Sing. 1.	<b>rĕg-ēb-am</b>	<i>I was ruling or I ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ēr-em</b>
2.	<b>rĕg-ēb-ās</b>	<i>Thou wast ruling or Thou ruledst</i>	<b>rĕg-ēr-ēs</b>
3.	<b>rĕg-ēb-āt</b>	<i>He was ruling or He ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ēr-ēt</b>
Plur. 1.	<b>rĕg-ēb-ām-ūs</b>	<i>We were ruling or We ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ēr-ēm-ūs</b>
2.	<b>rĕg-ēb-āt-is</b>	<i>Ye were ruling or Ye ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ēr-ēt-is</b>
3.	<b>rĕg-ēb-ant</b>	<i>They were ruling or They ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ēr-ent</b>

58.

## PRESENT STEM

## Active Voice

*Present* ✓

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. 1.	ăm-o <i>I am loving or I love</i>	ăm-em
2.	ăm-ās <i>Thou art loving or Thou lovest</i>	ăm-ēs
3.	ăm-ăt <i>He is loving or He loves</i>	ăm-ët
Plur. 1.	ăm-ăm-ūs <i>We are loving or We love</i>	ăm-ēm-ūs
2.	ăm-ăt-īs <i>Ye are loving or Ye love</i>	ăm-ët-īs
3.	ăm-ant <i>They are loving or They love</i>	ăm-ent

*Future* ✓

Sing. 1.	ăm-ăb-o <i>I shall love</i>
2.	ăm-ăb-īs <i>Thou wilt love</i>
3.	ăm-ăb-it <i>He will love</i>
Plur. 1.	ăm-ăb-im-ūs <i>We shall or will love</i>
2.	ăm-ăb-it-īs <i>Ye will love</i>
3.	ăm-ăb-unt <i>They will love</i>

*Imperfect* ✓

Sing. 1.	ăm-ăb-ăm <i>I was loving or I loved</i>	ăm-ăr-em
2.	ăm-ăb-ās <i>Thou wast loving or Thou lovedst</i>	ăm-ăr-ēs
3.	ăm-ăb-ăt <i>He was loving or He loved</i>	ăm-ăr-ët
Plur. 1.	ăm-ăb-ăm-ūs <i>We were loving or We loved</i>	ăm-ăr-ēm-ūs
2.	ăm-ăb-ăt-īs <i>Ye were loving or Ye loved</i>	ăm-ăr-ët-īs
3.	ăm-ăb-ant <i>They were loving or They loved</i>	ăm-ăr-ent

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

<i>Present.</i>	Sing. 2.	<b>rĕg-ĕ</b>	<i>Rule (thou)</i>
	Plur. 3.	<b>rĕg-ĭt-ĕ</b>	<i>Rule (ye)</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Sing. 2. } 3. }	<b>rĕg-ĭt-o</b>	<i>Thou shalt or must rule</i>
			<i>He shall or must rule</i>
	Plur. 2. } 3. }	<b>rĕg-ĭt-ōt-ĕ</b>	<i>Ye shall or must rule</i>
			<i>They shall or must rule</i>

## Verbal Noun-Forms

<i>Infinitive Present</i>		<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕ</b>	<i>to rule</i>
<i>Participle Present</i>	S. Nom.	<b>rĕg-ens</b>	<i>ruling</i>
	Acc.	<b>rĕg-ent-em</b>	(m. f.), <b>rĕg-ens</b> (n.)
<i>Gerund</i>	Nom. }	<b>rĕg-end-um</b>	<i>ruling</i>
	Acc. }		

59.

## PASSIVE VOICE

*Present* ✓

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Sing. 1.	<b>rĕg-ōr</b>	<i>I am being ruled</i> or <i>I am ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ār</b>
	2. <b>rĕg-ĕr-is</b>	<i>Thou art being ruled</i> or <i>Thou art ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ār-is</b> or <b>rĕg-ār-ē</b>
	3. <b>rĕg-īt-ūr</b>	<i>He is being ruled</i> or <i>He is ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-āt-ūr</b>
Plur. 1.	<b>rĕg-īm-ūr</b>	<i>We are being ruled</i> or <i>We are ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ām-ūr</b>
	2. <b>rĕg-īm-ĭn-ī</b>	<i>Ye are being ruled</i> or <i>Ye are ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ām-ĭn-ī</b>
	3. <b>rĕg-unt-ūr</b>	<i>They are being ruled</i> or <i>They are ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ant-ūr</b>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

<i>Present.</i>	Sing. 2.	ăm-ă	Love (thou)
	Plur. 2.	ăm-ăt-ě	Love (ye)
<i>Future.</i>	Sing. 2.	ăm-ăt-o	Thou shalt or must love
	3.		He shall or must love
	Plur. 2.	ăm-ăt-ôt-ě	Ye shall or must love
	3.	ăm-ant-o	They shall or must love

## Verbal Noun-Forms

<i>Infinitive Present</i>		ăm-ăr-ě	to love
<i>Participle Present</i>	S. Nom.	ăm-ans	loving
	Acc.	ăm-ant-em	(m. f.), ăm-ans (n.)
<i>Gerund</i>	Nom.	ăm-and-um	loving
	Acc.		

60.

## PASSIVE VOICE

*Present*

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing. 1.	ăm-өр	<i>I am being loved</i> or <i>I am loved</i>	ăm-өр
2.	ăm-ăr-Is	<i>Thou art being loved</i> or <i>Thou art loved</i>	ăm-әр-Is or ăm-әр-ě
3.	ăm-ăt-űr	<i>He is being loved</i> or <i>He is loved</i>	ăm-ět-űr
Plur. 1.	ăm-ăm-űr	<i>We are being loved</i> or <i>We are loved</i>	ăm-әм-űr
2.	ăm-ăm-în-î	<i>Ye are being loved</i> or <i>Ye are loved</i>	ăm-әм-în-î
3.	ăm-ant-űr	<i>They are being loved</i> or <i>They are loved</i>	ăm-ent-űr

*Future* ✓

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. 1.	<b>rĕg-ar</b>	<i>I shall be ruled</i>
2.	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĭs</b> or <b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕ</b>	<i>Thou wilt be ruled</i>
3.	<b>rĕg-ĕt-ŭr</b>	<i>He will be ruled</i>
Plur. 1.	<b>rĕg-ĕm-ŭr</b>	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
2.	<b>rĕg-ĕm-ĭn-ĭ</b>	<i>Ye will be ruled</i>
3.	<b>rĕg-ent-ŭr</b>	<i>They will be ruled</i>

*Imperfect* ✓

Sing. 1.	<b>rĕg-ĕb-ĕr</b>	<i>I was being ruled</i> or <i>I was ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕr</b>
2.	<b>rĕg-ĕb-ĕr-ĭs</b> or <b>rĕg-ĕb-ĕr-ĕ</b>	<i>Thou wast being ruled</i> or <i>Thou wast ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕr-ĭs</b> or <b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕr-ĕ</b>
3.	<b>rĕg-ĕb-ĕt-ŭr</b>	<i>He was being ruled</i> or <i>He was ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕt-ŭr</b>
Plur. 1.	<b>rĕg-ĕb-ĕm-ŭr</b>	<i>We were being ruled</i> or <i>We were ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕm-ŭr</b>
2.	<b>rĕg-ĕb-ĕm-ĭn-ĭ</b>	<i>Ye were being ruled</i> or <i>Ye were ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕm-ĭn-ĭ</b>
3.	<b>rĕg-ĕb-ant-ŭr</b>	<i>They were being ruled</i> or <i>They were ruled</i>	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ent-ŭr</b>

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	Sing. 2.	<b>rĕg-ĕr-ĕ</b>	<i>Be ruled</i>
	Plur. 2.	<b>rĕg-ĭm-ĭn-ĭ</b>	<i>Be ye ruled</i>
<i>Future</i>	Sing. 2.	<b>rĕg-ĭt-ĕr</b>	{ <i>Thou shalt or must be ruled</i> <i>He shall or must be ruled</i>
	3.		
	Plur. 3.	<b>rĕg-unt-ĕr</b>	<i>They shall or must be ruled</i>

*Verbal Noun-Forms*

<i>Infinitive Present</i>		<b>rĕg-ĭ</b>	<i>to be ruled</i>
<i>Gerundive</i>	Sing. Nom. m.	<b>rĕg-end-ŭs</b>	{ <i>to rule or to be ruled</i> (used adjectivally)
	f.	<b>rĕg-end-ĕ</b>	
	n.	<b>rĕg-end-um</b>	

*Future*

## INDICATIVE.

Sing. 1.	ăm-ăb-ôr	<i>I shall be loved</i>
2.	ăm-ăb-êr-îs or ăm-ăb-êr-ê	<i>Thou wilt be loved</i>
3.	ăm-ăb-ît-ûr	<i>He will be loved</i>
Plur. 1.	ăm-ăb-îm-ûr	<i>We shall be loved</i>
2.	ăm-ăb-îm-în-î	<i>Ye will be loved</i>
3.	ăm-ăb-unt-ûr	<i>They will be loved</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Imperfect*

Sing. 1.	ăm-ăb-âr	<i>I was being loved</i> or <i>I was loved</i>	ăm-âr-êr
2.	ăm-ăb-âr-îs or ăm-ăb-âr-ê	<i>Thou wast being loved</i> or <i>Thou wast loved</i>	ăm-âr-êr-îs or ăm-âr-êr-ê
3.	ăm-ăb-ât-ûr	<i>He was being loved</i> or <i>He was loved</i>	ăm-âr-êt-ûr
Plur. 1.	ăm-ăb-âm-ûr	<i>We were being loved</i> or <i>We were loved</i>	ăm-âr-êm-ûr
2.	ăm-ăb-âm-în-î	<i>Ye were being loved</i> or <i>Ye were loved</i>	ăm-âr-êm-în-î
3.	ăm-ăb-ant-ûr	<i>They were being loved</i> or <i>They were loved</i>	ăm-âr-ent-ûr

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	Sing. 2.	ăm-âr-ê	<i>Be (thou) loved</i>
	Plur. 2.	ăm-âm-în-î	<i>Be (ye) loved</i>
<i>Future</i>	Sing. 2. } ăm-ât-ôr	{ <i>Thou shalt or must be loved</i>	
	3. }	{ <i>He shall or must be loved</i>	
	Plur. 3.	ăm-ant-ôr	<i>They shall or must be loved</i>

*Verbal Noun-Forms*

<i>Infinitive Present</i>		ăm-âr-î	<i>to be loved</i>	
<i>Gerundive</i>	Sing. Nom. m.	ăm-and-ûs	} <i>to love or to be loved</i> (used adjectivally)	
		f. ăm-and-ă		
		n. ăm-and-um		
		etc.		



## 61.

## PERFECT STEM

## Active Voice

*Perfect* ✓

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing.	1. <b>rex-i</b> <i>I ruled or I have ruled</i>		<b>rex-ër-im</b>
	2. <b>rex-is-ti</b> <i>Thou ruledst or Thou hast ruled</i>		<b>rex-ër-is</b>
	3. <b>rex-it</b> <i>He ruled or He has ruled</i>		<b>rex-ër-it</b>
Plur.	1. <b>rex-im-üs</b> <i>We ruled or We have ruled</i>		<b>rex-ër-im-üs</b>
	2. <b>rex-is-tis</b> <i>Ye ruled or Ye have ruled</i>		<b>rex-ër-it-is</b>
	3. <b>rex-ër-unt</b> <i>They ruled or They have ruled</i> or <b>rex-ër-ë</b>		<b>rex-ër-int</b>

*Completed Future* ✓

Sing.	1. <b>rex-ër-o</b> <i>I shall have ruled</i>	[The i seems to have been properly short in the fut. perf. and long in the perf. subj.; but there are many cases in which this rule is not observed.]
	2. <b>rex-ër-is</b> <i>Thou wilt have ruled</i>	
	3. <b>rex-ër-it</b> <i>He will have ruled</i>	
Plur.	1. <b>rex-ër-im-üs</b> <i>We shall have ruled</i>	
	2. <b>rex-ër-it-is</b> <i>Ye will have ruled</i>	
	3. <b>rex-ër-int</b> <i>They will have ruled</i>	

*Pluperfect* ✓

Sing.	1. <b>rex-ër-am</b> <i>I had ruled</i>	<b>rex-is-sem</b>
	2. <b>rex-ër-äs</b> <i>Thou hadst ruled</i>	<b>rex-is-sës</b>
	3. <b>rex-ër-ät</b> <i>He had ruled</i>	<b>rex-is-sët</b>
Plur.	1. <b>rex-ër-äm-üs</b> <i>We had ruled</i>	<b>rex-is-sëm-üs</b>
	2. <b>rex-ër-ät-is</b> <i>Ye had ruled</i>	<b>rex-is-sët-is</b>
	3. <b>rex-ër-ant</b> <i>They had ruled</i>	<b>rex-is-sent</b>

*Infinitive* **rex-is-së** *to have ruled*

62.

## PERFECT STEM

## Active Voice

*Perfect* ✓

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE.
Sing.	1. <b>āmāv-i</b> <i>I loved or have loved</i>		<b>āmāv-ēr-im</b>
	2. <b>āmāv-isti</b> <i>Thou lovedst or hast loved</i>		<b>āmāv-ēr-is</b>
	3. <b>āmāv-īt</b> <i>He loved or has loved</i>		<b>āmāv-ēr-īt</b>
Plur.	1. <b>āmāv-īm-ūs</b> <i>We loved or have loved</i>		<b>āmāv-ēr-īm-ūs</b>
	2. <b>āmāv-is-tīs</b> <i>Ye loved or have loved</i>		<b>āmāv-ēr-īt-is</b>
	3. <b>āmāv-ēr-unt</b> <i>They loved or have loved</i> or <b>āmāv-ēr-ē</b>		<b>āmāv-ēr-int</b>

*Completed Future* ✓

Sing.	1. <b>āmāv-ēr-o</b> <i>I shall have loved</i>
	2. <b>āmāv-ēr-is</b> <i>Thou wilt have loved</i>
	3. <b>āmāv-ēr-īt</b> <i>He will have loved</i>
Plur.	1. <b>āmāv-ēr-īm-ūs</b> <i>We shall have loved</i>
	2. <b>āmāv-ēr-īt-is</b> <i>Ye will have loved</i>
	3. <b>āmāv-ēr-int</b> <i>They will have loved</i>

*Pluperfect* ✓

Sing.	1. <b>āmāv-ēr-am</b> <i>I had loved</i>	<b>āmāv-is-sem</b>
	2. <b>āmāv-ēr-ās</b> <i>Thou hadst loved</i>	<b>āmāv-is-sēs</b>
	3. <b>āmāv-ēr-āt</b> <i>He had loved</i>	<b>āmāv-is-sēt</b>
Plur.	1. <b>āmāv-ēr-ām-ūs</b> <i>We had loved</i>	<b>āmāv-is-sēm-ūs</b>
	2. <b>āmāv-ēr-āt-is</b> <i>Ye had loved</i>	<b>āmāv-is-sēt-is</b>
	3. <b>āmāv-ēr-ant</b> <i>They had loved</i>	<b>āmāv-is-sent</b>

*Infinitive* **āmāv-is-sē** *to have loved*



## SUPINE STEM

## Active Voice

*Supine***āmāt-um** *to love***āmāt-ū** *in the loving*

*Part. Fut. (Sing. Nom.)* **āmāt-ūr-ūs** (m.)  
**āmāt-ūr-ā** (f.)  
**āmāt-ūr-um** (n.) } *about to love*

*Infin. Fut. (Sing. Nom.)* **āmāt-ūr-ūs, -a, -um esse**, *to be about to love*  
 „ „ **fuisse**, *to have been about to love*

64

## SUPINE STEM

## Passive Voice

*Perfect*

Sing.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1.	<b>āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um sum</b> <i>I have been or am loved</i>	<b>āmāt-ūs, -a, -um sim</b>
2.	<b>āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um es</b> <i>Thou hast been or art loved</i>	„ „ „ <b>sis</b>
3.	<b>āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um est</b> <i>He (she, it) has been or is loved</i>	„ „ „ <b>sit</b>

Plur.

1.	<b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā sūmūs</b> <i>We have been or are loved</i>	<b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā simūs</b>
2.	<b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā estīs</b> <i>Ye have been or are loved</i>	„ „ „ <b>sitīs</b>
3.	<b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā sunt</b> <i>They have been or are loved</i>	„ „ „ <b>sint</b>

*Completed Future ✓*

Sing.

1. rect-ūs rect-a rect-um	ēro	<i>I shall have been ruled</i>
2.   "       "       "	erīs	<i>Thou wilt have been ruled</i>
3.   "       "       "	erīt	<i>He (she, it) will have been ruled</i>

Plur.

1. rect-ī rect-ae rect-ā	erimus	<i>We shall have been ruled</i>
2.   "       "       "	eritis	<i>Ye will have been ruled</i>
3.   "       "       "	erunt	<i>They will have been ruled</i>

*Pluperfect ✓*

Sing.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. rect-ūs rect-a rect-um	erām	rect-ūs, -ā, -um	essem
<i>I had been ruled</i>			
2. rect-ūs rect-a rect-um	erās	"   "   "	essēs
<i>Thou hadst been ruled</i>			
3. rect-ūs rect-a rect-um	erāt	"   "   "	essēt
<i>He (she, it) had been ruled</i>			

Plur.

1. rect-ī rect-ae rect-a	erāmūs	rect-ī, -ae, -ā	essēmūs
<i>We had been ruled</i>			
2. rect-ī rect-ae rect-a	erātīs	"   "   "	essētīs
<i>Ye had been ruled</i>			
3. rect-ī rect-ae rect-a	erant	"   "   "	essent
<i>They had been ruled</i>			

*Participle Perfect* rect-ūs, -ā, -um, ruled.*Infinitive Perfect* (Sing. Nom.) rect-ūs, -ā, -um esse, to have been, or to be, ruled.

*Completed Future*

Sing.

1. <b>āmāt-us, -ā, -um</b>	<b>ēro</b>	<i>I shall have been loved</i>
2.     "     "     "	<b>erīs</b>	<i>Thou wilt have been loved</i>
3.     "     "     "	<b>erit</b>	<i>He (she, it) will have been loved</i>

Plur.

1. <b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā</b>	<b>erimūs</b>	<i>We shall have been loved</i>
2.     "     "     "	<b>eritis</b>	<i>Ye will have been loved</i>
3.     "     "     "	<b>erunt</b>	<i>They will have been loved</i>

*Pluperfect*

Sing.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. <b>āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um</b>	<b>eram</b>	<b>āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um</b>	<b>essem</b>
	<i>I had been loved</i>		
2. <b>āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um</b>	<b>erās</b>	"     "     "	<b>essēs</b>
	<i>Thou hadst been loved</i>		
3. <b>āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um</b>	<b>erāt</b>	"     "     "	<b>essēt</b>
	<i>He (she, it) had been loved</i>		

Plur.

1. <b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā</b>	<b>erāmūs</b>	<b>āmāt-ī -ae, -ā</b>	<b>essēmūs</b>
	<i>We had been loved</i>		
2. <b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā</b>	<b>erātīs</b>	"     "     "	<b>essētīs</b>
	<i>Ye had been loved</i>		
3. <b>āmāt-ī, -ae, -ā</b>	<b>erant</b>	"     "     "	<b>essent</b>
	<i>They had been loved</i>		

*Participle Perfect (Sing. Nom.)***āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um, loved.***Infinitive Perfect (Sing. Nom.)*  
*been, or to be, loved.***āmāt-ūs, -ā, -um esse, to have**

## OTHER VOWEL CONJUGATIONS

65. In some i-stems the *i* is retained throughout as part of the stem: in others it is only found in certain parts, not belonging to the original stem. To the latter class belong *cāpio*, *take*; *cūpio*, *desire*; *fācio*, *make*; *fōdio*, *dig*; *pārio*, *bring forth*; *rāpio*, *seize*; *sāpio*, *have taste*; *quātio*, *shake*; the compounds of these verbs and of the obsolete verbs *spēcio* (*-spīcio*), *see*; *lācio* (*-līcio*), *draw*.

66.

## PRESENT STEM

## Active Voice

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Singular.

*Present*

1. trīb-u-o, <i>assign</i>	cāp-i-o, <i>take</i>	aud-i-o, <i>hear</i>	mōn-e-o, <i>warn</i>
2. trīb-u-is	cāp-is	aud-is	mōn-ēs
3. trīb-u-īt	cāp-īt	aud-īt	mōn-ēt

## Plural.

1. trīb-u-īm-ūs	cāp-īm-ūs	aud-īm-ūs	mōn-ēm-ūs
2. trīb-u-īt-is	cāp-īt-is	aud-īt-is	mōn-ēt-is
3. trīb-u-unt	cāp-i-unt	aud-i-unt	mōn-ent

## Singular.

*Future*

1. trīb-u-am	cāp-i-am	aud-i-am	mōn-ēb-o
2. trīb-u-ēs	cāp-i-ēs	aud-i-ēs	mōn-ēb-is
3. trīb-u-ēt	cāp-i-ēt	aud-i-ēt	mōn-ēb-īt

## Plural.

1. trīb-u-ēm-ūs	cāp-i-ēm-ūs	aud-i-ēm-ūs	mōn-ēb-īm-ūs
2. trīb-u-ēt-is	cāp-i-ēt-is	aud-i-ēt-is	mōn-ēb-īt-is
3. trīb-u-ent	cāp-i-ent	aud-i-ent	mōn-ēb-unt

Singular.

*Imperfect*

1. trīb-u-ēb-am	cāp-i-ēb-am	aud-i-ēb-am	mōn-ēb-am
2. trīb-u-ēb-ās	cāp-i-ēb-ās	aud-i-ēb-ās	mōn-ēb-ās
3. trīb-u-ēb-āt	cāp-i-ēb-āt	aud-i-ēb-āt	mōn-ēb-āt

Plural.

1. trīb-u-ēb-ām-ūs	cāp-i-ēb-ām-us	aud-i-ēb-ām-ūs	mōn-ēb-ām-ūs
2. trīb-u-ēb-āt-īs	cāp-i-ēb-āt-īs	aud-i-ēb-āt-īs	mōn-ēb-āt-īs
3. trīb-u-ēb-ant	cāp-i-ēb-ant	aud-i-ēb-ant	mōn-ēb-ant

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

Singular.

*Present*

2. trīb-u-ē	cāp-ē	aud-ī	mōn-ē
-------------	-------	-------	-------

Plural.

2. trīb-u-īt-ē	cāp-īt-ē	aud-īt-ē	mōn-ēt-ē
----------------	----------	----------	----------

Singular.

*Future*

2. } trīb-u-īt-o	cāp-īt-o	aud-īt-o	mōn-ēt-o
3. }			

Plural.

2. trīb-u-īt-ōt-ē	cāp-īt-ōt-ē	aud-īt-ōt-ē	mōn-ēt-ōt-ē
3. trīb-u-unt-o	cāp-i-unt-o	aud-i-unt-o	mōn-ent-o

*Verbal Noun-Forms**Infin. Pres.*

trīb-u-ēr-ē	cāp-ēr-ē	aud-ir-ē	mōn-ēr-ē
-------------	----------	----------	----------

*Part. Pres. (Sing. Nom.)*

trīb-u-ens	cāp-i-ens	aud-i-ens	mōn-ens
------------	-----------	-----------	---------

*Gerund (Sing. Nom.)*

trīb-u-end-um	cāp-i-end-um	aud-i-end-um	mōn-end-um
---------------	--------------	--------------	------------



## 67.

## PRESENT STEM

## Passive Voice

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Singular.

*Present*

1. trīb-u-ōr	cāp-i-ōr	aud-i-ōr	mōn-e-ōr
2. trīb-u-ēr-īs	cāp-ēr-īs	aud-ir-īs	mōn-ēr-īs
3. trīb-u-īt-ūr	cāp-īt-ūr	aud-īt-ūr	mōn-ēt-ūr

## Plural.

1. trīb-u-īm-ūr	cāp-īm-ūr	aud-īm-ūr	mōn-ēm-ūr
2. trīb-u-īmīn-i	cāp-īmīn-i	aud-īmīn-i	mōn-ēmīn-i
3. trīb-u-unt-ūr	cāp-i-unt-ūr	aud-i-unt-ūr	mōn-ent-ūr

## Singular.

*Future*

1. trīb-u-ār	cāp-i-ār	aud-i-ār	mōn-ēb-ār
2. trīb-u-ēr-īs	cāp-i-ēr-īs	aud-i-ēr-īs	mōn-ēb-ēr-īs
3. trīb-u-ēt-ūr	cāp-i-ēt-ūr	aud-i-ēt-ūr	mōn-ēb-īt-ūr

## Plural.

1. trīb-u-ēm-ūr	cāp-i-ēm-ūr	aud-i-ēm-ūr	mōn-ēb-īm-ūr
2. trīb-u-ēmīn-i	cāp-i-ēmīn-i	aud-i-ēmīn-i	mōn-ēb-īmīn-i
3. trīb-u-ent-ūr	cāp-i-ent-ūr	aud-i-ent-ūr	mōn-ēb-unt-ūr

## Singular.

*Imperfect*

1. trīb-u-ēb-ār	cāp-i-ēb-ār	aud-i-ēb-ār	mōn-ēb-ār
2. trīb-u-ēb-ār-īs	cāp-i-ēb-ār-īs	aud-i-ēb-ār-īs	mōn-ēb-ār-īs
3. trīb-u-ēb-āt-ūr	cāp-i-ēb-āt-ūr	aud-i-ēb-āt-ūr	mōn-ēb-āt-ūr

## Plural.

1. trīb-u-ēb-ām-ūr	cāp-i-ēb-ām-ūr	aud-i-ēb-ām-ūr	mōn-ēb-ām-ūr
2. trīb-u-ēb-āmīn-i	cāp-i-ēb-āmīn-i	aud-i-ēb-āmīn-i	mōn-ēb-āmīn-i
3. trīb-u-ēb-ant-ūr	cāp-i-ēb-ant-ūr	aud-i-ēb-ant-ūr	mōn-ēb-ant-ūr

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

Singular.

*Present*

2. trīb-u-ēr-ě	căp-ēr-ě	aud-ir-ě	mön-ēr-ě
----------------	----------	----------	----------

Plural.

2. trīb-u-īmīn-ī	căp-īmīn-ī	aud-īmīn-ī	mön-ēmīn-ī
------------------	------------	------------	------------

Singular.

*Future*

2. } trīb-u-īt-ör	căp-īt-ör	aud-īt-ör	mön-ēt-ör
3. }			

Plural.

3. trīb-u-unt-ör	căp-i-unt-ör	aud-i-unt-ör	mön-ent-ör
------------------	--------------	--------------	------------

*Verbal Noun-Forms**Inf. Pres.*

trīb-u-i	căp-i	aud-ir-i	mön-ēr-i
----------	-------	----------	----------

*Gerundive* (Sing. Nom.)

trīb-u-end-us	căp-i-end-us	aud-i-end-ūs	mön-end-ūs
---------------	--------------	--------------	------------

68.

## PRESENT STEM

## Active Voice

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Singular.

*Present*

1. trīb-u-am	căp-i-am	aud-i-am	mön-e-am
2. trīb-u-ās	căp-i-ās	aud-i-ās	mön-e-ās
3. trīb-u-ăt	căp-i-ăt	aud-i-ăt	mön-e-ăt

Plural.

1. trīb-u-ām-ūs	căp-i-ām-ūs	aud-i-ām-ūs	mön-e-ām-ūs
2. trīb-u-ăt-īs	căp-i-ăt-īs	aud-i-ăt-īs	mön-e-ăt-īs
3. trīb-u-ant	căp-i-ant	aud-i-ant	mön-e-ant

Singular.

*Imperfect*

1. trīb-u-ēr-em	cāp-ēr-em	aud-ir-em	mōn-ēr-em
2. trīb-u-ēr-ēs	cāp-ēr-ēs	aud-ir-ēs	mōn-ēr-ēs
3. trīb-u-ēr-ēt	cāp-ēr-ēt	aud-ir-ēt	mōn-ēr-ēt

Plural.

1. trīb-u-ēr-ēm- ūs	cāp-ēr-ēm-ūs	aud-ir-ēm-ūs	mōn-ēr-ēm-ūs
2. trīb-u-ēr-ēt-īs	cāp-ēr-ēt-īs	aud-ir-ēt-īs	mōn-ēr-ēt-īs
3. trīb-u-ēr-ent	cāp-ēr-ent	aud-ir-ent	mōn-ēr-ent

Passive Voice

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Singular.

*Present*

1. trīb-u-ār	cāp-i-ār	aud-i-ār	mōn-e-ār
2. trīb-u-ār-īs	cāp-i-ār-īs	aud-i-ār-īs	mōn-e-ār-īs
3. trīb-u-āt-ūr	cāp-i-āt-ūr	aud-i-āt-ūr	mōn-e-āt-ūr

Plural.

1. trīb-u-ām-ūr	cāp-i-ām-ūr	aud-i-ām-ūr	mōn-e-ām-ūr
2. trīb-u-āmin-ī	cāp-i-āmin-ī	aud-i-āmin-ī	mōn-e-āmin-ī
3. trīb-u-ant-ūr	cāp-i-ant-ūr	aud-i-ant-ūr	mōn-e-ant-ūr

Singular.

*Imperfect*

1. trīb-u-ēr-ēr	cāp-ēr-ēr	aud-ir-ēr	mōn-ēr-ēr
2. trīb-u-ēr-ēr-īs	cāp-ēr-ēr-īs	aud-ir-ēr-īs	mōn-ēr-ēr-īs
3. trīb-u-ēr-ēt-ūr	cāp-ēr-ēt-ūr	aud-ir-ēt-ūr	mōn-ēr-ēt-ūr

Plural.

1. trīb-u-ēr-ēm- ūr	cāp-ēr-ēm-ūr	aud-ir-ēm-ūr	mōn-ēr-ēm-ūr
2. trīb-u-ēr- ēmīn-ī	cāp-ēr-ēmīn-ī	aud-ir-ēmīn-ī	mōn-ēr-ēmīn-ī
3. trīb-u-ēr-ent- ūr	cāp-ēr-ent-ūr	aud-ir-ent-ūr	mōn-ēr-ent-ūr

69.

## PERFECT STEM

## Active Voice

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Singular.

*Perfect*

1. trību-ī	cēp-ī	audīv-ī	mōnu-ī
2. trību-is-tī	cēp-is-tī	audīv-is-tī	mōnu-is-tī
3. trību-īt	cēp-īt	audīv-īt	mōnu-īt

## Plural.

1. trību-īm-ūs	cēp-īm-ūs	audīv-īm-ūs	mōnu-īm-ūs
2. trību-is-tīs	cēp-is-tīs	audīv-is-tīs	mōnu-is-tīs
3. trību-ēr-unt	cēp-ēr-unt	audīv-ēr-unt	mōnu-ēr-unt

## Singular.

*Completed Future*

1. trību-ēr-o	cēp-ēr-o	audīv-ēr-o	mōnu-ēr-o
2. trību-ēr-is	cēp-ēr-is	audīv-ēr-is	mōnu-ēr-is
3. trību-ēr-īt	cēp-ēr-īt	audīv-ēr-īt	mōnu-ēr-īt

## Plural.

1. trību-ēr-īm-ūs	cēp-ēr-īm-ūs	audīv-ēr-īm-ūs	mōnu-ēr-īm-ūs
2. trību-ēr-īt-is	cēp-ēr-īt-is	audīv-ēr-īt-is	mōnu-ēr-īt-is
3. trību-ēr-int	cēp-ēr-int	audīv-ēr-int	mōnu-ēr-int

## Singular.

*Pluperfect*

1. trību-ēr-am	cēp-ēr-am	audīv-ēr-am	mōnu-ēr-am
2. trību-ēr-ās	cēp-ēr-ās	audīv-ēr-ās	mōnu-ēr-ās
3. trību-ēr-āt	cēp-ēr-āt	audīv-ēr-āt	mōnu-ēr-āt

## Plural.

1. trību-ēr-ām-ūs	cēp-ēr-ām-ūs	audīv-ēr-ām-ūs	mōnu-ēr-ām-ūs
2. trību-ēr-āt-is	cēp-ēr-āt-is	audīv-ēr-āt-is	mōnu-ēr-āt-is
3. trību-ēr-ant	cēp-ēr-ant	audīv-ēr-ant	mōnu-ēr-ant

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Singular.

*Perfect*

1. tribu-ēr-im	cēp-ēr-im	audiv-ēr-im	mōnu-ēr-im
2. tribu-ēr-is	cēp-ēr-is	audiv-ēr-is	mōnu-ēr-is
3. tribu-ēr-īt	cēp-ēr-īt	audiv-ēr-īt	mōnu-ēr-īt

Plural.

1. tribu-ēr-im-ūs	cēp-ēr-im-ūs	audiv-ēr-im-ūs	mōnu-ēr-im-ūs
2. tribu-ēr-īt-is	cēp-ēr-īt-is	audiv-ēr-īt-is	mōnu-ēr-īt-is
3. tribu-ēr-int	cēp-ēr-int	audiv-ēr-int	mōnu-ēr-int

Singular.

*Pluperfect*

1. tribu-is-sem	cēp-is-sem	audiv-is-sem	mōnu-is-sem
2. tribu-is-sēs	cēp-is-sēs	audiv-is-sēs	mōnu-is-sēs
3. tribu-is-sēt	cēp-is-sēt	audiv-is-sēt	mōnu-is-sēt

Plural.

1. tribu-is-sēm-ūs	cēp-is-sēm-ūs	audiv-is-sēm-ūs	mōnu-is-sēm-ūs
2. tribu-is-sēt-is	cēp-is-sēt-is	audiv-is-sēt-is	mōnu-is-sēt-is
3. tribu-is-sent	cēp-is-sent	audiv-is-sent	mōnu-is-sent

70.

## SUPINE STEM

## Passive Voice

## INDICATIVE MOOD

Singular.

*Perfect*

1. tribūt-ūs	capt-ūs	audit-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	sum
2. "	"	"	"	es
3. "	"	"	"	est

Plural.

1. tribūt-ī	capt-ī	audit-ī	mōnīt-ī	sūmus
2. "	"	"	"	estis
3. "	"	"	"	sunt

Singular.

*Completed Future*

1. trībūt-ūs	capt-ūs	audit-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	ēro
2. "	"	"	"	ērīs
3. "	"	"	"	ērīt

Plural.

1. trībūt-ī	capt-ī	audit-ī	mōnīt-ī	ērimus
2. "	"	"	"	ērītīs
3. "	"	"	"	ērunt

Singular.

*Pluperfect*

1. trībūt-ūs	capt-ūs	audit-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	ēram
2. "	"	"	"	ērās
3. "	"	"	"	ērāt

Plural.

1. trībūt-ī	capt-ī	audit-ī	mōnīt-ī	ērāmūs
2. "	"	"	"	ērātīs
3. "	"	"	"	ērant

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Singular.

*Perfect*

1. trībūt-ūs	capt-ūs	audit-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	sim
2. "	"	"	"	sīs
3. "	"	"	"	sīt

Plural.

1. trībūt-ī	capt-ī	audit-ī	mōnīt-ī	simūs
2. "	"	"	"	sītīs
3. "	"	"	"	sint

Singular.

*Pluperfect*

1. trībūt-ūs	capt-ūs	audit-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	essem
2. "	"	"	"	essēs
3. "	"	"	"	essēt

Plural.

1. tribūt-i	capt-i	audit-i	mōnit-i	essēmus
2.     "	"	"	"	essētis
3.     "	"	"	"	essent

## DEPONENT VERBS

71. *Deponent* verbs have the inflexions of the passive voice with the active meanings, and have also a present and future participle active and the gerunds and supines.

The following examples are given (for brevity's sake) only in the first person singular, or other leading form: *sēqu-*, *follow*; *prēcā-*, *pray*; *vērē-*, *fear*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD

<i>Present.</i>	<b>sēquor</b> , <i>I follow</i> or <i>am following</i>	<b>prēcōr</b>	<b>vērēōr</b>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>sēquar</b> , <i>I shall</i> <i>follow</i>	<b>prēcābor</b>	<b>vērēbor</b>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<b>sēquēbar</b> , <i>I was</i> <i>following</i> or <i>I</i> <i>followed</i>	<b>prēcābar</b>	<b>vērēbar</b>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>sēcūtus sum</b> , <i>I</i> <i>followed</i> or <i>have</i> <i>followed</i>	<b>prēcātus sum</b>	<b>vērītus sum</b>
<i>Comp. Fut.</i>	<b>sēcūtus ēro</b> , <i>I</i> <i>shall</i> <i>have</i> <i>followed</i>	<b>prēcātus ēro</b>	<b>vērītus ēro</b>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<b>sēcūtus eram</b> , <i>I had followed</i>	<b>prēcātus eram</b>	<b>vērītus eram</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Present.</i>	<b>sēquar</b>	<b>prēcōr</b>	<b>vērēar</b>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<b>sēquērer</b>	<b>prēcārer</b>	<b>vērērer</b>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>sēcūtus sim</b>	<b>prēcātus sim</b>	<b>vērītus sim</b>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<b>sēcūtus essem</b>	<b>prēcātus essem</b>	<b>vērītus essem</b>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

<i>Present.</i>	<b>séquērē, follow</b> ( <i>thou</i> )	<b>prēcārē</b>	<b>vērērē</b>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>sēcūtor, thou</b> <i>shalt follow</i>	<b>prēcātor</b>	<b>vērētor</b>

## Verbal Nouns

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<b>sēqui, to follow</b>	<b>prēcāri</b>	<b>vērēri</b>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>sēcūtus esse,</b> <i>to have fol-</i> <i>lowed</i>	<b>prēcātus esse</b>	<b>vērītus esse</b>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<b>séquens, follow-</b> <i>ing</i>	<b>prēcans</b>	<b>vērens</b>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>sēcūtūrus, going</b> <i>to follow</i>	<b>prēcātūrus</b>	<b>vērītūrus</b>
<i>Past.</i>	<b>sēcūtus, having</b> <i>followed</i>	<b>prēcātus</b>	<b>vērītus</b>

GERUND.	<b>séquendum, fol-</b> <i>lowing</i>	<b>prēcandum</b>	<b>vērendum</b>
---------	---	------------------	-----------------

GERUNDIVE.	<b>séquendus, to</b> <i>follow or to be</i> <i>followed</i>	<b>prēcandus</b>	<b>vērendus</b>
------------	---	------------------	-----------------

## INFLEXIONS OF IRREGULAR VERBS

72. The tenses of the verb of *being* are partly from a root **es-** whence **s-um** (for **esum**), and partly from the root **fu-**. **Pos-sum**, *I am able* or *I can*, is a compound of **pōte sum**, and usually retains the **t** before a vowel but assimilates it to a following **-s**. The perfect **potui** is not a compound.



<i>Present.</i>	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Sing. 1. <i>sum, I am</i>	<i>pos-sum, I can</i>	<i>sim</i>	<i>possim</i>	
2. <i>es, Thou art</i>	<i>pōtēs, Thou canst</i>	<i>sis</i>	<i>possis</i>	
3. <i>est, He is</i>	<i>pōtest, He can</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>possit</i>	
Plur. 1. <i>sūmūs, We are</i>	<i>possūmūs, We can</i>	<i>simūs</i>	<i>possimūs</i>	
2. <i>es-tis, Ye are</i>	<i>pōtestis, Ye can</i>	<i>sitis</i>	<i>possitis</i>	
3. <i>sunt, They are</i>	<i>possunt, They can</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>possint</i>	

*Future.*

Sing. 1. <i>ēro, I shall be</i>	<i>pōtēro, I shall be able</i>
2. <i>eris, Thou wilt be</i>	<i>pōtēris, Thou wilt be able</i>
3. <i>erit, He will be</i>	<i>pōtērit, He will be able</i>
Plur. 1. <i>erimūs, We shall be</i>	<i>pōtērimūs, We shall be able</i>
2. <i>eritis, Ye will be</i>	<i>pōtēritis, Ye will be able</i>
3. <i>erunt, They will be</i>	<i>pōtērunt, They will be able</i>

*Imperfect.*

Sing. 1. <i>eram, I was</i>	<i>pōtēram, I could or might</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>possem</i>
2. <i>erās, Thou wast</i>	<i>pōtērās</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>possēs</i>
3. <i>erāt, He was</i>	<i>pōtērāt</i>	<i>essēt</i>	<i>possēt</i>
Plur. 1. <i>erāmūs, We were</i>	<i>pōtērāmūs</i>	<i>essēmūs</i>	<i>possēmūs</i>
2. <i>erātis, Ye were</i>	<i>pōtērātis</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>possētis</i>
3. <i>erant, They were</i>	<i>pōtērant</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>possent</i>

*Perfect.*

Sing. 1. <i>fui, I was or have been</i>	<i>pōtui, I could or might</i>	<i>fuērim</i>	<i>pōtuērim</i>
2. <i>fuisti, Thou wast or hast been</i>	<i>pōtuisti</i>	<i>fuēris</i>	<i>pōtuēris</i>
3. <i>fuit, He was</i>	<i>pōtuīt</i>	<i>fuērīt</i>	<i>pōtuērīt</i>
Plur. 1. <i>fuimūs, We were</i>	<i>pōtuimūs</i>	<i>fuērimūs</i>	<i>pōtuērimūs</i>
2. <i>fuistis, Ye were</i>	<i>pōtuistis</i>	<i>fuērītis</i>	<i>pōtuērītis</i>
3. <i>fuērunt or fuēre, They were</i>	<i>pōtuērunt or potuēre</i>	<i>fuērīnt</i>	<i>pōtuērīnt</i>

*Comp. Future.*

Sing. 1. **fuëro**, *I shall have been*      **pötuëro**, *I shall have been able*

2. **fuëris**      **pötuëris**

3. **fuërit**      **pötuërit**

Plur. 1. **fuërimus**      **pötuërimus**

2. **fuëritis**      **pötuëritis**

3. **fuërint**      **pötuërint**

*Pluperfect.*

Sing. 1. **fuëram**, *I had been, etc.*      **pötuëram**, *I had been able, etc.*      **fuissem**      **pötuisssem**

2. **fuëräs**      **pötuëräs**      **fuisse**s      **pötuissës**

3. **fuërät**      **pötuërät**      **fuisse**t      **pötuissët**

Plur. 1. **fuërämüs**      **pötuërämüs**      **fuisse**-müs      **pötuissë**-müs

2. **fuërätis**      **pötuërätis**      **fuisse**tis      **pötuissëtis**

3. **fuërant**      **pötuërant**      **fuisse**nt      **pötuissent**

## IMPERATIVE

*Present* Sing. 2. **ës**, *be*      *Future* Sing. 2 and 3. **esto**  
 Plur. 2. **estë**, *be ye*      Plur. 2. **estötë**  
 3. **sunto**

*Verbal Nouns*

INFINITIVE. *Present.* **esse**, *to be*      **posse**, *to be able*  
*Perfect.* **fuisse**, *to have been*      **pötuisse**, *to have been able*  
*Future.* **före** or **fütürus esse**, *to be going to be*

PARTICIPLES. *Pres.* (**s-ens** or **ens**)      **pötens**, *powerful*, only  
 only in compounds.      adj.  
*Future.* **fütürus**, *going to be*

For the imperfect subj. **förem**, **föres**, **föret**, **förëmus**, **förëtis**, **förent** are frequently used. For the present (3d person) **fuat** is rarely used.

Like **sum** are inflected its compounds, viz.—

**absum** (perf. **abfui** or **āfui**), *am away*.

**adsum** or **assum** (perf. **adfui** or **affui**), *am present*.

**dēsum** (de-est, de-eram, etc., pronounced **dēst**, **dēram**, etc.), *am wanting*.

**insum**, *am in* ; **intersum**, *am among* ; **obsum**, *am in the way of*.

**praesum**, *am over* (3d pers. sing. **praeest**, sometimes written **praest**).

**prōsum**, *am for, benefit* (**prōd-** before a vowel ; e.g. **prōd-es**, **prōd-ero**).

**subsum**, *am under*, **supersum**, *am above*.

Of these **absum** and **praesum** alone have a present participle **absens**, **praesens**.

## 73.

## INDICATIVE MOOD

	<b>Do,</b>	<b>Volo,</b>	<b>Nōlo</b>	<b>Mālo</b>
			( <b>Ne-volo</b> ),	( <b>Ma-volo</b> )
<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>give.</i>	<i>be willing.</i>	<i>be unwilling.</i>	<i>for mag-volo,</i>
				<i>prefer.</i>
Sing. 1.	<b>do</b>	<b>vōlo</b>	<b>nōlo</b>	<b>mālo</b>
2.	<b>dās</b>	<b>vis</b>	<b>non vis</b>	<b>māvis</b>
3.	<b>dāt</b>	<b>vult</b>	<b>non vult</b>	<b>māvult</b>
Plur. 1.	<b>dāmus</b>	<b>vōlūmus</b>	<b>nōlūmus</b>	<b>mālūmus</b>
2.	<b>dātis</b>	<b>vultis</b>	<b>non vultis</b>	<b>māvultis</b>
3.	<b>dant</b>	<b>vōlunt</b>	<b>nōlunt</b>	<b>mālunt</b>
<i>Future Sing.</i> 1.	<b>dābo</b>	<b>vōlam</b>	(not used)	(not used)
2.	<b>dābis</b>	<b>vōles</b>	<b>nōles</b>	<b>māles</b>
<i>Imperf. Sing.</i> 1.	<b>dābam</b>	<b>vōlēbam</b>	<b>nōlēbam</b>	<b>mālēbam</b>
<i>Perf. Sing.</i> 1.	<b>dēdi</b>	<b>vōlui</b>	<b>nōlui</b>	<b>mālui</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

<i>Present Sing.</i> 1.	<b>dem</b>	<b>vēlim</b>	<b>nōlim</b>	<b>mālim</b>
Plur. 1.	<b>dēmus</b>	<b>vēlimus</b>	<b>nōlimus</b>	<b>mālimus</b>
<i>Imperf. Sing.</i> 1.	<b>dārem</b>	<b>vellem</b>	<b>nollem</b>	<b>māllem</b>

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present.</i> Sing. 2.	<b>dā</b>	<b>nōli</b>
Plur. 2.	<b>dāte</b>	<b>nōlite</b>
<i>Future.</i> Sing. 2.	<b>dāto</b>	<b>nōlito</b>
Plur. 2.	<b>dātōte</b>	<b>nōlitōte</b>
3.	<b>danto</b>	<b>nōlunto</b>

## INFINITIVE

<i>Present.</i>	<b>dāre</b>	<b>velle</b>	<b>nolle</b>	<b>malle</b>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>dātūrus</b>	<b>esse</b>		

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Present.</i>	<b>dans</b>	<b>vōlens</b>	<b>nōlens</b>	(not used)
<i>Future.</i>	<b>dātūrus</b>			
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>dātus</b>			

GERUND. **dandum volendum**GERUNDIVE. **dandus**74. **Fio**

<b>Eo</b> (used as pas- (stem i-), sive of <b>facio</b> ), go. become.	<b>Edo</b> , eat.	<b>Fero</b> , bear.	<b>Feror</b> , be borne.
--	----------------------	------------------------	-----------------------------

*Present.*

<b>ēo</b>	<b>fio</b>	<b>ēdo</b>	<b>fēro</b>	<b>fērōr</b>
<b>is</b>	<b>fis</b>	<b>ēdis</b> or <b>ēs</b>	<b>fers</b>	<b>ferris</b>
<b>it</b>	<b>fit</b>	<b>ēdit</b> or <b>est</b>	<b>fert</b>	<b>fertūr</b>
<b>imus</b>		<b>ēdimus</b>	<b>fērīmus</b>	<b>fērīmūr</b>
<b>itis</b>		<b>ēditis</b> or <b>estis</b>	<b>fertis</b>	<b>fērīmīni</b>
<b>ēunt</b>	<b>fiunt</b>	<b>ēdunt</b>	<b>fērunt</b>	<b>fēruntūr</b>

*Future.*

<b>ibo</b>	<b>fiam</b>	<b>ēdam</b>	<b>fēram</b>	<b>fērār</b>
<b>ibis</b>	<b>fiēs</b>	<b>ēdēs</b>	<b>fērēs</b>	<b>fērēris</b>

*Imperfect.*

<b>ibam</b>	<b>fiēbam</b>	<b>ēdēbam</b>	<b>fērēbam</b>	<b>fērēbār</b>
-------------	---------------	---------------	----------------	----------------

*Perfect.*

<b>ivi</b>	<b>factus sum</b>	<b>ēdi</b>	<b>tūli</b>	<b>lātus sum</b>
------------	-------------------	------------	-------------	------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present.*

<b>eam</b>	<b>fiam</b>	<b>edam or edim</b>	<b>feram</b>	<b>fērār</b>
<b>eamus</b>	<b>fiāmus</b>	<b>edāmus or edimus</b>	<b>fērāmus</b>	<b>fērāmur</b>

*Imperfect.*

<b>irem</b>	<b>fiērem</b>	<b>edērem or essem</b>	<b>ferrem</b>	<b>ferrer</b>
-------------	---------------	----------------------------	---------------	---------------

## IMPERATIVE

<b>i</b>	<b>fi</b>	<b>ēde or ēs</b>	<b>fēr</b>	<b>ferre</b>
<b>ite</b>	<b>fite</b>	<b>ēdite or este</b>	<b>ferre</b>	<b>fērīmini</b>
<b>ito</b>		<b>ēdito or esto</b>	<b>ferto</b>	<b>fertor</b>
<b>itōte</b>		<b>ēditōte or estōte</b>		
<b>ēunto</b>		<b>ēdunto</b>	<b>fērunto</b>	<b>fēruntor</b>

## INFINITIVE

<b>ire</b>	<b>fiēri</b>	<b>edēre or esse</b>	<b>ferre</b>	<b>ferri</b>
<b>itūrus esse</b>	<b>factum iri</b>	<b>ēsūrus esse</b>	<b>lātūrus esse</b>	<b>lātum iri</b>

## PARTICIPLE

<b>iens</b>		<b>edens</b>	<b>ferens</b>	
<i>Gen.</i> <b>ēuntis</b>				
	<b>factus</b>	<b>ēsūrus</b>	<b>lātūrus</b>	<b>lātus</b>

*Gerund.*

<b>ēundum</b>	<b>fāciendum</b>	<b>edendum</b>	<b>ferendum</b>
---------------	------------------	----------------	-----------------

*Gerundive.*

<b>-eundus</b>	<b>fāciendus</b>	<b>edendus</b>	<b>fērendus</b>
<i>(in comp.)</i>			

**Quō, nēquō,** resemble **eo** but have no imperative, participle, or gerund. Only the present indic. and subj. are at all frequent.

**Quis** and **quit** (pres. act.) are only used after **non**, as **non quis**, **non quit** (for **nequis**, etc.)

## VERBAL STEMS

75. Most verbs exhibit in the *present stem* the regular stem of the verb without alteration, as

**rĕg-**, **rĕgĕre** ; **caed-**, **caedĕre** ; **āmā-**, **amāre** ; **audi-**, **audire**, etc.

In some verbs, however, there is one of the following changes :—

- (a) Reduplication of the stem, as **gĕn-** makes **gignĕrĕ** for **gi-gĕn-ĕre**.
- (b) Lengthening of the stem vowel, as **dŭc-**, **dŭcere** ; **fīd-**, **fīdere**.
- (c) Suffixing **n**, as **tem-**, **tem-n-ĕre** ; **si-**, **sī-n-ĕre**.
- (d) Inserting **m** or **n** before the final stem consonant, as **rŭp-**, **rumpĕre** ; **tāg-**, **tangĕre** ; **fīd-**, **fīndĕre**.
- (e) Suffixing **sc** or **isc**, as **no-**, **no-sc-ĕre** ; **splende-**, **splende-sc-ĕre** ; **pāc-**, **pāc-isc-i**.

76. The *perfect stem* is in a few cases the same as the verbal stem, but usually it is formed by

- (a) Reduplication, as **posco**, **pōposci** ;
- (b) Lengthening the stem vowel, as **lĕg-o**, **lĕgi** ;
- (c) Suffixing **s**, as **carpo**, **carpsi** ;
- (d) Suffixing either **u** or **v**, as **trēm-o**, **trēmui** ; **āmā-**, **āmāvi**.

77. The *supine stem* is formed by suffixing **t** (the supine itself ending in **-tum** is here usually given).

If the verb-stem ends in a long vowel, this is generally retained, as **āmā-**, **āmāre**, **āmāt-um** ; **crĕ-**, **crescere**, **crĕtum** ; **ācŭ-**, **ācŭĕre**, **ācŭtum**.

If the verb-stem ends in a short vowel, this vowel is usually changed to *i* or omitted, as

<b>crepā</b>	<b>crepāre</b>	<b>crepītum</b>
<b>monē</b>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>monītum</b>
<b>fugī</b>	<b>fugēre</b>	<b>fugītum</b>

If the verb-stem ends in a consonant, this consonant is either

retained, as **carp-ēre**, **carp-tum**  
or assimilated, as **reg-ere**, **rec-tum**

If the stem end in *d* or *t* or two consonants, the first being a liquid, the supine ends in **-sum**, as

<b>flect-ēre</b>	<b>flexum</b> (for <b>flect-tum</b> )
<b>plaud-ēre</b>	<b>plausum</b> (for <b>plaud-tum</b> )
<b>sparg-ēre</b>	<b>sparsum</b> (for <b>sparg-tum</b> )
<b>defend-ere</b>	<b>defensum</b> (for <b>defend-tum</b> )

The same change of **-tum** to **-sum** takes place also if a verb-stem ends in a short vowel preceded by *d* or *t* or two consonants, as above.

<b>fōdi-o</b> , <b>fōdēre</b> , <b>fossum</b>
<b>prandē-</b> , <b>prandēre</b> , <b>pransum</b>
<b>mulgē-</b> , <b>mulgēre</b> , <b>mulsum</b>
<b>senti-</b> , <b>sentire</b> , <b>sensum</b>

78. (a) Verbs with stems in *ā*, *ē*, and *i* usually have

perfect in **-āvi**, **-ēvi**, **-īvi**  
supine in **-ātum**, **-ētum**, **-ītum**

(b) Verbs with stems in *ā* or *ē* have perfect in **-ui**, supine in **-itum**.

In these verbs the *ā* or *ē* combines with the initial vowel of the suffix in tenses formed from the present stem, so as to show *ā* or *ē*, as

<b>sōnāmus</b>	<b>sonāre</b>	<b>sonui</b>	<b>sonitum</b>
<b>mōnēmus</b>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>monui</b>	<b>monitum</b>

The root-vowel is almost always short.

But there are many exceptions, particularly

(c) Verbs with stems in -u have perfect in -ui, supine in -ūtum (sometimes -ūitum).

Those in -vē have root-syllable lengthened and perfect in i simple, as vōvēre, vōvi, vōtum.

(d) Some consonant verbs whose root-syllable is short have perfect in -ui, supine in -itum, as frēmo, fremui, fremitum.

(e) Many verbs whose root-syllable is long, especially when this is because it ends in more than one consonant, have perfect in -si, and supine in -tum or -sum, as

carpēre	carpsi	carptum
augēre	auxi	auctum
sūgēre	suxi	suctum
sentīre	sensi	sensum

79. The following are exceptions to (d)—

jūbeo	jussi	prēmo	pressi
		cōquo	coxi
allicio	allexi	aspicio	aspexi
dīlīgo	dīlexi	rēgo	rexī
tēgo	texi	trāho	traxi
		vēho	vexi
quātio	quassi	dīvido	dīvīsi
māneo	mansi		
cūpio	cupīvi	pēto	petīvi
rūdo	rudīvi	līno	līvi or lēvi
eo	īvi	sīno	sīvi
queo	quīvi		
sēro	sēvi		
bībo	bībi	scindo	scīdi
fīndo	fīdi		
āgo	ēgi	vēnio	vēni
sēdeo	sēdi	vīdeo	vīdi



## Exceptions to (e)—

sorbeo	sorbui	torpeo	torpui
arceo	arcui	sterto	stertui
oportet	oportuit	sordeo	sordui
calleo	callui	palleo	pallui
āreo	ārui	pāreo	parui
terreo	terrui	torreo	torrui
censeo	censui	texo	texui
ferveo	ferbui	horreo	horrui
verto	verti	cūdo	cūdi
scando	scandi	mando	mandi
pando	pandi	strideo	stridi

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

80. The following list contains all the principal verbs which may be regarded as somewhat irregular.

*N.B.*—(1) The supine is not much used, but is here mentioned wherever it or a perfect participle is known, as this is similarly formed.

*N.B.*—(2) Where the English translation as given here, whether with or without a preposition, allows of the immediate addition of an object, the verb is transitive (though it may perhaps also be used intransitively), *e.g.* **arcesso**, *send for*; **laedo**, *hurt*, are transitive. Where the English translation here given requires the *addition* of a preposition in order to make sense with an object, the verb is intransitive, *e.g.* **nōceo**, *be hurtful*.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	Pres. Infinitive.	Stem.
<b>accerso.</b> See <b>arcesso</b>				
<b>āgo</b> , <i>do, drive</i>	<b>ēgi</b>	<b>actum</b>	<b>āgērē</b>	<b>āg-</b>

**ādigo**, *drive to, compel*, **ādēgi**, **ādactum**, **ādīgērē**. So the other compounds, except

**cōgo**, *compel*, **cōēgi**, **coactum**, **cōgērē**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>aio, say</b>				

The following forms only are preserved: Pres. **āio, āis, āit, āiunt.** Imperf. **aiēbam,** etc., complete. Pres. subj. **aias, aiat.** The participle **āiens** is used only as adjective.

<b>algeo, be cold</b>	<b>alsi</b>		<b>algēre</b>	<b>alg-e-</b>
<b>ālo, nourish, raise</b>	<b>ālui</b>	<b>altum</b>	<b>ālēre</b>	<b>āl-</b>
		(ālītum, post-Augustan)		
<b>āmicio, clothe</b>		<b>amictum</b>	<b>āmīcīre</b>	<b>āmīc-i-</b>
<b>ango, throttle, vex</b>			<b>angēre</b>	<b>ang-</b>
<b>āpiscor, fasten to oneself, get</b>	<b>aptus sum</b>	<b>aptum</b>	<b>āpisci</b>	<b>āp-i-</b>

More usual is compound **ādīpiscor, ādeptus sum, ādīpisci.**

<b>arceo, inclose, keep off</b>	<b>arcui</b>	(artus, adj. arcēre narrow)	<b>arc-e-</b>
---------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------------	---------------

**exerceo, exercise, exercui, exercitum, exercēre.** So also **coerceo.**

<b>arcesso, fetch, send for</b>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{arcessi} \\ \text{arcessitum} \\ \text{arcessere} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{arcess-} \\ \text{arcessi-} \end{array}$		
---------------------------------	---	--	--

Another form (perhaps of different origin) is **accerso.**

<b>ardeo, be on fire</b>	<b>arsī</b>	(arsūrus)	<b>ardēre</b>	<b>arde-</b>
<b>audeo, dare</b>	<b>ausus sum</b>	<b>ausum</b>	<b>audēre</b>	<b>aud-e-</b>
<b>āvē</b>	} imperat. <i>hail</i> , also <b>avēto</b> , plur. <b>āvēte</b> , inf. <b>āvēre</b>			
<b>hāvē</b>				
<b>augeo, increase (trans.), endow</b>	<b>auxi</b>	<b>auctum</b>	<b>augēre</b>	<b>aug-e-</b>
<b>bībo, drink</b>	<b>bībi</b>		<b>bībēre</b>	<b>bīb-</b>

For supine and fut. part. **pōtum, pōtūrus** are used.

<b>cādo, fall</b>	<b>cēcīdi</b>	<b>cāsum</b>	<b>cādēre</b>	<b>cād-</b>
-------------------	---------------	--------------	---------------	-------------

**occīdo, fall, occīdi, occāsum, occidēre.** The other compounds have no supine.

<b>caedo, fell, cut, slay</b>	<b>cēcīdi</b>	<b>caesum</b>	<b>caedēre</b>	<b>caed-</b>
<b>occido, slay, occīdi, occisum, occidēre.</b> So other compounds.				

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>-cando, light</b> ; only in compounds <i>e.g. accendo, accendi, accensum, accendēre.</i>				
<b>cāno, sing, play</b> <b>cēcini</b> (cantus, <b>cānere</b> <b>cān-</b> (on harp, etc.) subst.)				
<b>concīno, sing together, concinui, concentum, concinēre.</b> So other compounds.				
<b>cāpresso, undertake</b> <b>cāpressivi capessitum capessēre</b> { <b>cāpress-</b> <b>cāpio, take</b> <b>cēpi</b> <b>captum</b> <b>cāpēre</b> <b>cāp-i-</b> <b>capessi-</b>				
<b>concīpio, concēpi, conceptum, concipēre.</b> So most other compounds.				
<b>cāreo, be in want</b> <b>cārui</b> ( <b>cārītūrus</b> ) <b>cārēre</b> <b>cār-e-</b> <b>carpo, nibble, pluck</b> <b>carpsi</b> <b>carptum</b> <b>carpēre</b> <b>carp-</b>				
<b>dēcerpo, pluck off, dēcerpsi, dēcerptum, dēcerpēre.</b> So other compounds.				
<b>cāveo, beware, be-</b> <b>cāvi</b> <b>cautum</b> <b>cāvēre</b> <b>cāv-e-</b> <i>ware of</i>				
<b>cēdo, give way, cessi</b> <b>cessum</b> <b>cēdēre</b> <b>cēd-</b> <i>yield up</i>				
<b>cēdō, give, said to be old imper. 2nd pers. sing. The plural</b> <b>cette</b> (for <b>cēdite</b> ) only in early dramatic poets.				
<b>-cello, strike (?)</b> only in compounds : <b>celsus, adj. high</b> <b>cell-</b> <b>percello, strike down, percūli, perculsus, percellere.</b>				
<b>censeo, count, give</b> <b>censui</b> <b>censum</b> <b>censēre</b> <b>cens-e-</b> <i>opinion</i>				
<b>cerno, sift, distin-</b> { <b>crēvi</b> { <b>crētum</b> } <b>cernere</b> { <b>cēr-</b> <b>guish, decide, see</b> } <b>certus,</b> <b>adj. sure</b> } <b>crē-</b>				
The meaning <i>see</i> is confined to pres., fut., and imperf. tenses, <b>decerno, decide, decrēvi, decrētum, decernere.</b> So other compounds.				
<b>cieo</b> } <i>stir up</i> <b>cīvi</b> <b>cītum</b> { <b>cīēre</b> <b>ci-e-</b> <b>-cio</b> } <b>-cīre</b> <b>ci-</b>				
The <b>i</b> stem is rare in the simple verb ; the <b>e</b> stem rare in the compounds.				

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>cingo, gird</b>	<b>cinxi</b>	<b>cinctum</b>	<b>cingere</b>	<b>cing-</b>
<b>claudio, shut</b>	<b>clausi</b>	<b>clausum</b>	<b>claudere</b>	<b>claud-</b>
<b>conclūdo, shut up, conclūsi, conclūsum, conclūdere.</b> So the other compounds.				

<b>coepio, begin</b>	<b>coepi</b>	<b>coeptum</b>	<b>coepere</b>	<b>coepi-</b>
Pres. ind. and subj. in Plautus only. Otherwise only perfect stem in use, except that <b>coeptus</b> and <b>coepturus</b> are also used.				

<b>cōlo, till, pay attention to</b>	<b>cōlui</b>	<b>cultum</b>	<b>cōlere</b>	<b>cōl-</b>
<b>consūlo, consult</b>	<b>consūlī</b>	<b>consultum</b>	<b>consūlere</b>	<b>consūl-</b>
<b>cōquo, cook</b>	<b>coxi</b>	<b>coctum</b>	<b>cōquere</b>	<b>cōqv-</b>
<b>crēdo.</b> See <b>do</b>				
<b>crēpo, rattle</b>	<b>crēpui</b>	<b>crēpītum</b>	<b>crēpare</b>	<b>crēp-ā-</b>
<b>cresco, grow</b>	<b>crēvi</b>	<b>crētum</b>	<b>crescere</b>	<b>crē-</b>
<b>cūbo, lie, lie ill</b>	<b>cūbui</b>	<b>cūbītum</b>	<b>cūbare</b>	<b>cūb-ā-</b>
<b>cūdo, hammer</b>	<b>cūdi</b>	<b>cūsum</b>	<b>cūdere</b>	<b>cūd-</b>
<b>-cumbo, lie, only in compounds</b>				

**accumbo, lie up (at table), accūbui, accūbītum, accumbere.**  
So the other compounds.

<b>cūpio, desire</b>	<b>cūpīvi</b>	<b>cūpītum</b>	<b>cūpere</b>	<b>cūp-ī-</b>
<b>curro, run</b>	<b>cūcurri</b>	<b>cursum</b>	<b>currere</b>	<b>curr-</b>

The compounds sometimes retain the reduplication, *e.g.* **accūcurri, decūcurri**; more usually drop it, *e.g.* **accurri**.

<b>dēleo, blot out</b>	<b>delēvi</b>	<b>delētum</b>	<b>delere</b>	<b>delē-</b>
<b>dico, say</b>	<b>dixi</b>	<b>dictum</b>	<b>dicere</b>	<b>dīc-</b>
<b>disco, learn</b>	<b>dīdīci</b>		<b>discere</b>	<b>dīc-</b>

Compounds retain reduplication, *e.g.* **ēdīdīci**.

<b>divīdo, divide</b>	<b>divīsi</b>	<b>divīsum</b>	<b>divīdere</b>	<b>dī-vīd-</b>
<b>do, give (see p. 78)</b>	<b>dēdi</b>	<b>dātum</b>	<b>dāre</b>	<b>dā-</b>

The half-compounds **circumdo, surround**; **pessumdo, ruin**; **satisdo, satisfy**; **venumdo, expose to sale, follow do** precisely.

**crēdo**, *entrust, believe*; **vendo**, *sell*; and the compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have consonant-stems, *e.g.* **crēdo**, **crēdīdi**, **crēditum**, **crēdere**; **abdo**, *hide away*, **abdidi**, **abditum**, **abdere**.

• The reduplication is usually retained in the compounds.

For the passives of **vendo** and **perdo**, *ruin*, **vēneo** and **pēreo** are used. But **perditus** and **perdendus** are in use.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>dōceo</b> , <i>teach</i>	<b>dōcui</b>	<b>doctum</b>	<b>dōcere</b>	<b>dōc-ē-</b>
<b>dōleo</b> , <i>be in pain</i>	<b>dōlui</b>	<b>(dōlitūrus)</b>	<b>dōlere</b>	<b>dōl-ē-</b>
<b>dōmo</b> , <i>tame</i>	<b>dōmui</b>	<b>dōmitum</b>	<b>dōmare</b>	<b>dōm-ā-</b>
<b>dūco</b> , <i>draw, lead,</i> <i>account</i>	<b>duxi</b>	<b>ductum</b>	<b>dūcere</b>	<b>dūc-</b>
<b>ēdo</b> , <i>eat</i>	<b>ēdi</b>	<b>ēsum</b>	<b>ēdere</b>	<b>ēd-</b>

**cōmēdo** has **cōmēsūm** and **cōmestum**.

**ēmo**, *buy (orig. take)* **ēmi** **emptum** **ēmēre** **ēm-**

**ādīmo**, *take away*, **ādēmi**, **ādemptum**, **ādīmēre**. So other compounds except

(1) **coēmo** (**coēmi**, **coemptum**), which retains **e**.

(2) The earlier compounds **cōmo**, **dēmo**, **prōmo**, **sūmo**, which make **compsi**, **comptum**, etc.

**eo**, *go* (see p. 79) **ivi** **itum** **ire** **ī**

Compounds always omit **v** in 1st pers. perf., *e.g.* **ādii**; and usually in other persons of perfect tenses.

**vēneo**, *be for sale*, perf. **vēnii**, no supine, is a compound of **eo**. See **do** above.

<b>fācesso</b> , <i>cause,</i> <i>make off</i> }	<b>fācessi</b>	<b>fācessitum</b>	<b>fācessēre</b>	{ <b>fācess-</b> <b>fācess-i-</b>
<b>fācio</b> , <i>make, do</i>	<b>fēcī</b>	<b>factum</b>	<b>fācēre</b>	

For the passive in tenses formed from present stem, **fio** is used.

**prōficio**, *make progress*, **prōfēcī**, **prōfectum**, **prōficēre**. So the other compounds with prepositions.

But **cālēfacio**, *make warm*, **trēmēfacio**, *make to tremble*, etc., retain **a**.

**prōficiscor**, *set out (on a journey), travel*, **prōfectum**, **prōficisci**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>fallo, deceive, elude</b>	<b>fēfelli</b>	<b>falsum</b>	<b>fallere</b>	<b>fall-</b>
<b>rēfello, refute, rēfelli, rēfellere.</b>				
<b>farcio, stuff</b>	<b>farsi</b>	<b>fartum</b>	<b>farcire</b>	<b>farc-i-</b>
<b>rēfercio, rēfersi, rēfertum, rēfercire.</b>				
<b>fātēor, acknowledge</b>		<b>fassum</b>	<b>fātēri</b>	<b>fāt-ē-</b>
<b>confiteor, confess, confessum, confiteri.</b>	<b>So</b>		<b>profiteor,</b>	
<i>profess.</i>				

<b>fātisco</b>	} <i>yawn</i>	(fessus, adj. } <b>fātiscere</b>	} <b>fāti-</b>
<b>fātiscor</b> (old)			
	} <i>droop</i>	(weary) } <b>fātisci</b>	

**dēfētiscor, to be worn out, defessum, dēfētisci.**

<b>fāveo, be favourable</b>	<b>fāvi</b>	<b>fautum</b>	<b>fāvēre</b>	<b>fāv-e-</b>
<b>-fendo, strike, only in compounds</b>				<b>fend-</b>
<b>defendo, ward off, guard, defendi, defensum, defendere.</b>				
So also <b>offendo, strike against.</b>				

<b>fērio, strike</b>		<b>fērire</b>	<b>fēr-i-</b>
<b>(percussi, percussum are often used as perfect and supine.)</b>			

<b>fēro, bear (see p. 79) (tūli)</b>	<b>(latum)</b>	<b>ferre</b>	<b>fer-</b>
--------------------------------------	----------------	--------------	-------------

Perfect and supine are borrowed from **tollo**.

<b>affēro, bring to</b>	<b>attūli</b>	<b>allātum</b>	<b>afferre</b>
<b>aufēro, take away</b>	<b>abstūli</b>	<b>ablātum</b>	<b>auferre</b>
<b>diffēro, put off</b>	<b>distūli</b>	<b>dilātum</b>	<b>differre</b>
<b>offēro, bring to</b>	<b>obtūli</b>	<b>oblātum</b>	<b>offerre</b>
<b>rēfēro, bring back</b>	<b>rettuli</b>	<b>rēlātum</b>	<b>referre</b>

**rēfert, it is of importance** (probably for **rei fert**), is used as impersonal. **suffēro, endure**, has for perf. rarely **sustūli**, usually **sustinui**.

<b>ferveo, boil, glow</b>	{ <b>fervi</b> <b>ferbui</b>	<b>fervēre</b>	<b>ferv-ē-</b>

A consonantal stem (e.g. **fervit, fervēre**) frequent in poets.

<b>fido, trust</b>	<b>fisum</b>	<b>fidēre</b>	<b>fid-</b>
--------------------	--------------	---------------	-------------

**fisus sum** is used for perf., *I have trusted*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>figo, fix</b>	<b>fixi</b>	<b>fixum</b>	<b>figere</b>	<b>fig-</b>

Also **fictus** as past participle.

<b>findo, cleave</b>	<b>fidi</b>	<b>fissum</b>	<b>findere</b>	<b>fid-</b>
<b>ingo, form, invent</b>	<b>inxi</b>	<b>fictum</b>	<b>ingere</b>	<b>fig-</b>
<b>fio, become</b> (see p. 79)			<b>fieri</b>	<b>fi-</b>

The compound **infat**, *he begins*, only in this one form (poetical).

<b>flecto, bend</b>	<b>flexi</b>	<b>flexum</b>	<b>flectere</b>	<b>flect-</b>
<b>fleo, weep</b>	<b>fleui</b>	<b>fletum</b>	<b>flere</b>	<b>fl-</b>

**-figo, strike**, only in compounds

**affigo, strike against, knock down, affixi, afflictum, affigere.**  
So the other compounds, except **pröfigo, put to rout, pröfägvi, pröfigätum, pröfigere.**

<b>fluo, flow</b>	<b>fluxi</b>		<b>fluere</b>	<b>flüg-</b>
-------------------	--------------	--	---------------	--------------

(**fluxus**, adj. *loose* ; **fluctus**, sub. *a wave*.)

<b>fodio, dig</b>	<b>fodi</b>	<b>fossum</b>	<b>fodere</b>	<b>föd-i-</b>
<b>fatur, he speaks</b>		<b>fatum</b>	<b>fari</b>	<b>fä-</b>

The following only found: pres. ind. **fatur** ; fut. **fabor, fäbitur** ; perf. **fatus est** ; pluperf. **fatus eram, erat** ; imper. **färe** ; inf. **fari** ; part. **fantem**, etc. (no nominative, except in phrase **fans atque infans**, Plaut.), **fätus, fando, fandus, and fatu.**

In compounds we have also **-fämur, -fämini** ; **-fäbar, -färer**, etc., and in imperat. (act. and dep.), **praefäto, praefämino.**

<b>föveo, keep warm, cherish</b>	<b>fövi</b>	<b>fötum</b>	<b>fövere</b>	<b>föv-ä-</b>
<b>frango, break in pieces</b>	<b>frägi</b>	<b>fractum</b>	<b>frangere</b>	<b>fräg-</b>

Compounds as **confringo, smash, confrägi, confractum, confringere.**

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>frēmo</b> , roar, snort	<b>frēmui</b>	<b>frēmītum</b>	<b>frēmēre</b>	<b>frēm-</b>
<b>frendo</b> , gnash (with the teeth)		<b>fressum</b>	<b>frendēre</b>	<b>frend-</b>
<b>frīco</b> , rub	<b>fricūi</b>	<b>frictum</b>	<b>fricāre</b>	<b>fric-ā-</b>
		<b>fricātum</b>		
<b>frigeo</b> , be cold	<b>frixi</b>		<b>frigēre</b>	<b>frig-e</b>
<b>fruor</b> , enjoy myself		<b>fructum</b>	<b>frui</b>	<b>frugv-</b>

Fut. part. **fruitūrus**.

<b>fūgio</b> , flee, fly from	<b>fūgi</b>	<b>(fūgitūrus)</b>	<b>fūgēre</b>	<b>fūg-i-</b>
<b>fulcio</b> , prop	<b>fulsi</b>	<b>fultum</b>	<b>fulcire</b>	<b>fulc-i-</b>
<b>fulgeo</b> , flash	<b>fulsi</b>		<b>fulgēre</b>	<b>fulg-ē-</b>

A consonantal stem, e.g. **fulgit**, **fulgēre**, is found in poets.

<b>fundo</b> , pour, rout (an enemy)	<b>fūdi</b>	<b>fūsum</b>	<b>fundēre</b>	<b>fūd-</b>
<b>fungor</b> , get quit, discharge myself (of a duty, etc.)		<b>functum</b>	<b>fungi</b>	<b>fung-</b>
<b>fūris</b> , thou ragest			<b>fūrēre</b>	<b>fūr-</b>

Only **furis**, **furit**, **furunt**, **furebas**, **furebat**, **furēre**, **furens** are found.

<b>gaudeo</b> , be glad	<b>gāvisum</b>	<b>gaudēre</b>	<b>gavid-e-</b>
-------------------------	----------------	----------------	-----------------

**gavisus sum**, I rejoiced.

<b>gēmo</b> , sigh, groan	<b>gēmui</b>	<b>gēmītum</b>	<b>gēmēre</b>	<b>gēm-</b>
<b>gēro</b> , carry, perform	<b>gessi</b>	<b>gestum</b>	<b>gērēre</b>	<b>gēs-</b>
<b>gigno</b> , beget, pro- duce	<b>gēnui</b>	<b>gēnītum</b>	<b>gignēre</b>	<b>gēn-</b>
<b>grādior</b> , step		<b>gressum</b>	<b>grādi</b>	<b>grād-i-</b>

Compounds as **aggrēdior**, attack, **aggressum**, **aggrēdi**.

<b>-grūo</b> , only in compounds	<b>grū-p.</b>
----------------------------------	---------------

**congruo**, agree, **congrui**, **congruēre**. So also **in-** .o,  
*impend.*

<b>hābeo</b> , have	<b>hābui</b>	<b>hābitum</b>	<b>hābēre</b>	<b>hāb-ē-</b>
---------------------	--------------	----------------	---------------	---------------



So the compounds **cohibeo**, *hold in*, **cohibui**, **cohibitum**, **cohibēre**, **dēbeo** (for **de-hibeo**), *owe*, **debui**, **dēbitum**, **dēbēre**; **praebeo** (for **praehibeo**), *afford*, **praebui**, **praebitum**, **praebēre**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>haereo</b> , <i>stick</i> , intr.	<b>haesi</b>	<b>haesum</b>	<b>haerēre</b>	<b>haer-e-</b>
<b>haurio</b> , <i>draw, drain</i> (water)	<b>hausi</b>	<b>haustum</b>	<b>haurire</b>	<b>haus-i-</b>

Fut. part. **haustūrus** (Cic.) and **hausūrus** (Verg.): both in later writers. The subst. is **haustus**.

<b>hisco</b> , <i>gape, open the mouth, to speak</i>			<b>hiscere</b>	<b>hi-</b>
<b>jaceo</b> , <i>lie</i>	<b>jacui</b>	( <b>jacitūrus</b> )	<b>jacere</b>	<b>jac-ē-</b>
<b>jacio</b> , <i>cast</i>	<b>jeci</b>	<b>jactum</b>	<b>jacere</b>	<b>jac-i-</b>

**abicio** (sometimes spelt **abjicio**), *throw away*, **abjēci**, **abjectum**, **abjēre**. So the other compounds. **Dissicio** is for **dis-jicio**.

**porricio**, *offer (sacrifices)*, etc., **porrectum**, **porricere** (without perf.)

<b>ico</b> , <i>strike</i>	<b>ici</b>	<b>ictum</b>	<b>icere</b>	<b>ic-</b>
----------------------------	------------	--------------	--------------	------------

Present is rare (**fērio** is generally used instead).

<b>incesso</b> , <i>attack</i>	<b>inCESSi</b>		<b>inCESSere</b>	<b>inCESS-</b>
<b>indulgeo</b> , <i>yield</i> , intr.	<b>indulsi</b>		<b>indulgere</b>	<b>indulg-e-</b>

<b>inquam</b> , <i>say</i>	<b>inquii</b>	{ <b>inqvā-</b> or <b>inqvī-</b>		
----------------------------	---------------	-------------------------------------	--	--

The following forms only occur. Pres. ind. **inquam**, **inquīs**, **inquit**, **inquīmus**, **inquiunt**. Fut. **inquies**, **inquiet**. Imperf. **inquietabat**. Perf. **inquii**, **inquisti**, **inquit**. Imperat. 2nd sing. **inque**, **inquīto**, plur. **inquīte**.

<b>irascor</b> , <i>grow angry</i>	<b>irātum</b>	<b>irasci</b>	<b>irā-</b>
------------------------------------	---------------	---------------	-------------

**irātus sum**, *I am angry*; **succensui**, *I (fired up, i.e.) grew angry*.

<b>jūbeo</b> , <i>bid</i>	<b>jussi</b>	<b>jussum</b>	<b>jūbere</b>	<b>jūb-e-</b>
<b>jungo</b> , <i>yoke, join</i>	<b>junxi</b>	<b>junctum</b>	<b>jungere</b>	<b>jung-</b>
<b>jūvo</b> , <i>help, delight</i>	<b>jūvi</b>	<b>jūtum</b>	<b>jūvāre</b>	<b>jūv-a-</b>

Fut. part. **jūvātūrus**. Adjūvo has **adjūtūrus**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>lābor</b> , <i>slip, glide</i>		<b>lapsum</b>	<b>lābi</b>	<b>lāb-</b>
<b>lācesso</b> , <i>provoke</i>	<b>lācessīvi</b>	<b>lācessitum</b>	<b>lācessēre</b>	{ <b>lācess-</b> <b>lācessi-</b>
<b>-lācio</b> , <i>draw</i> , only in compounds				

**allicio**, *draw to, entice*, **allexi**, **allectum**, **allicēre**. So **illicio**, **pellicio**.

**ēlicio**, *draw out*, **ēlicui**, **ēlicitum**, **ēlicēre**.

**laedo**, *strike* (rare), **laesi**      **laesum**      **laedēre**      **laed-**  
*hurt.*

**collido**, *dash together*, **collisi**, **collisum**, **collidēre**. So **allido**, etc.

<b>lambo</b> , <i>lick</i>	<b>lambi</b> (once)	<b>lambēre</b>	<b>lamb-</b>
<b>lāvo</b> , <i>wash</i>	<b>lāvi</b>	{ <b>lāvātum</b> <b>lantum</b> <b>lāvāre</b> <b>lōtum</b>	<b>lāv-ā-</b>

A consonantal stem (e.g. **lāvit**, **lāvēre**, etc.) is frequent in poets. For compounds see **luo**.

**lēgo**, *pick up, choose*, **lēgi**      **lectum**      **lēgēre**      **lēg-**  
*read*

**colligo**, *collect*, **collēgi**, **collectum**, **colligēre**. So compounds generally :

Except that (1) **allēgo**, *choose besides* ; **perlēgo**, *read through* ; **praelēgo**, *read to others* ; **rēlēgo**, *read again* ; **sublēgo**, *pick up, substitute, retain e*

(2) **intellēgo**, *understand* ; **neglēgo**, *neglect*, retain **e** and have perf. in **-xi**, e.g. **neglexi**. (Rarely **intellēgi**, **neglēgi**.) **dīligo**, *esteem*, has **dilexi**.

**libet**, *it pleases* { **libuit**  
**libitum est**      **lib-ē-**

Only used in 3rd pers. sing. Also participle **libens**. The stem vowel was in early times **u** ; e.g. **libet**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>liceo</b> , <i>be on sale</i>	<b>licui</b>	<b>licitum</b>	<b>licēre</b>	<b>lic-ē-</b>
<b>liceor</b> , <i>bid for</i>	<b>licitus sum</b>		<b>licēri</b>	<b>lic-ē-</b>
<b>licet</b> , <i>it is per- mitted</i>	<b>licuit</b> <b>licitum est</b>		<b>licēre</b>	<b>lic-ē-</b>

Only used in 3rd pers. Rarely in plural. **Licēto**, **licens**, **licitus**, also found.

<b>linō</b> , <i>besmear</i>	<b>lēvi</b>	<b>litum</b>	<b>linēre</b>	<b>li-</b>
------------------------------	-------------	--------------	---------------	------------

In post-Augustan writers, we have **linio**, **linivi**, **linitum**, **linire**.

<b>linquo</b> , <i>leave</i>	<b>liqui</b>	<b>linquere</b>	<b>liqu-</b>
------------------------------	--------------	-----------------	--------------

The compound, **relinquo**, **reliqui**, **relictum**, **relinquere**, is more usual.

<b>liqueo</b> , <i>be clear</i> , <i>fluid</i>	<b>licui</b>		<b>liquere</b>	<b>liqu-ē-</b>
<b>liquor</b> , <i>melt</i> , intr.			<b>liqui</b>	<b>liqu-</b>
<b>loquor</b> , <i>speak</i>		<b>locutum</b>	<b>loqui</b>	<b>loqu-</b>
<b>luceo</b> , <i>be light</i> , beam	<b>luxi</b>		<b>lucere</b>	<b>luc-e-</b>
<b>ludo</b> , <i>sport</i>	<b>lusi</b>	<b>lūsum</b>	<b>ludere</b>	<b>lud-</b>
<b>lugeo</b> , <i>mourn</i> , trans.	<b>luxi</b>	( <b>luctus</b> , subs.)	<b>lugere</b>	<b>lug-e-</b>
<b>luo</b> , <i>pay</i> , expiate	<b>lui</b>		<b>luere</b>	<b>lu-</b>

Compounds retain the original meaning, *wash* (**luo** = **lavo**), and have past part. e.g. **diluo**, **dilui**, **dilutum**, **diluere**.

<b>mando</b> , <i>chew</i>	<b>mandi</b> (once)	<b>mansum</b>	<b>mandere</b>	<b>mand-</b>
<b>maneo</b> , <i>remain</i> , <i>await</i>	<b>mansi</b>	<b>mansum</b>	<b>manere</b>	<b>man-ē-</b>

**eminēo**, *project*, **eminui**, **eminere** (no supine).

**permāneo** retains a.

<b>medeor</b> , <i>be a remedy</i>	<b>mederi</b>	<b>med-ē-</b>
<b>-mēniscor</b> , only in compounds		<b>mēn-</b>

Only perfect stem (with present meaning) in use. **Mēmīni**, *I remember*. Imperative **memento**, **mementote**.

**commīniscor**, *devise*, **commentum**, **commīnisci**. So also **reminiscor**, *call to mind*.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>mēreo</b> , <i>earn</i>	<b>mērui</b>	<b>mērītum</b>	<b>mērēre</b>	<b>mēr-ē-</b>
<b>mergo</b> , <i>sink</i> , <i>trans.</i>	<b>mersi</b>	<b>mersum</b>	<b>mergēre</b>	<b>merg-</b>
<b>mētior</b> , <i>measure</i>		<b>mensum</b>	<b>mētiri</b>	<b>mēt-ī-</b>
<b>mēto</b> , <i>now</i>	( <b>messem</b> <b>feci</b> )	<b>messum</b>	<b>mētēre</b>	<b>mēt-</b>
<b>mētūo</b> , <i>fear</i>	<b>mētui</b>		<b>mētūere</b>	<b>mētū-</b>
<b>mīco</b> , <i>quiver</i> , <i>flash</i>	<b>mīcui</b>		<b>mīcāre</b>	<b>mīc-ā-</b>

**ēmīco**, **ēmīcti**, fut. part. **ēmīcāturus**.

**dimīco**, **dimīcavi** (**dimīcti** twice in Ovid), **dimīcātum**.

<b>misceo</b> , <i>mix</i>	<b>miscui</b>	<b>mixtum</b> }	<b>miscēre</b>	<b>misc-ē-</b>
		<b>mīstum</b> }		
<b>mīserēor</b> , <i>feel pity</i>		<b>mīserītum</b> }	<b>mīserēri</b>	<b>mīser-ē-</b>
		<b>misertum</b> rare }		

**miseret** and (in early writers) **miserētur**, **miserescit** are used impersonally.

<b>mitto</b> , <i>let go</i> , <i>send</i>	<b>mīsi</b>	<b>missum</b>	<b>mittēre</b>	<b>mitt-</b>
<b>mōlo</b> , <i>grind</i>	<b>mōlui</b>	<b>mōlītum</b>	<b>mōlēre</b>	<b>mōl-</b>
<b>mōneo</b> , <i>warn</i>	<b>mōnui</b>	<b>mōnītum</b>	<b>mōnēre</b>	<b>mōn-ē-</b>
<b>mordeo</b> , <i>bite</i>	<b>mōmordi</b>	<b>morsum</b>	<b>mordēre</b>	<b>mord-e-</b>
<b>mōrior</b> , <i>die</i>	<b>mortūus</b> <b>sum</b>	( <b>mōritūr-</b> <b>us</b> )	<b>mōri</b>	<b>mōr-ī-</b>

Inf. **moriri**, **ēmoriri**, several times in Plaut., once in Ter., once in Ovid.

<b>mōveo</b> , <i>move</i> , <i>trans.</i>	<b>mōvi</b>	<b>mōtum</b>	<b>mōvēre</b>	<b>mōv-ē-</b>
<b>mulceo</b> , <i>stroke</i>	<b>mulsi</b>	<b>mulsum</b>	<b>mulcēre</b>	<b>mulc-e-</b>
<b>mulgeo</b> , <i>milk</i>	<b>mulsi</b>		<b>mulgēre</b>	<b>mulg-e-</b>
<b>-mungo</b> , only in compound				<b>mung-</b>

**ēmungo**, *wipe* (nose), **ēmunxi**, **ēmunctum**, **ēmungēre**.

<b>nanciscor</b> , <i>gain</i>	{ <b>nantum</b> <b>nactum</b>	<b>nancisci</b>	{ <b>nanc-i-</b> <b>nac-</b>
<b>nascor</b> , <i>be born</i>	<b>nātum</b>	<b>nasci</b>	<b>gnā-</b>

Originally **gnascor**, whence **agnātus**, **cognātus**, **prognātus**.

But **ēnascor**, **ēnātus**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>necto</b> , <i>link together</i>	<b>nexi</b>	<b>nexum</b>	<b>nectĕre</b>	<b>nect-</b>

**nexui** is probably from **nexo**, **nexĕre**, which is an early form.

<b>neo</b> , <i>spin</i>	<b>nĕvi</b>	<b>nĕtum</b> (Ulp.)	<b>nĕre</b>	<b>nĕ-</b>
--------------------------	-------------	---------------------	-------------	------------

**nĕqueo**. See **queo**; and § 74

<b>nitor</b> , <i>lean, strive</i>	{ <b>nixum</b> <b>nisum</b>	<b>niti</b>	<b>gnict-</b>
------------------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------	---------------

Originally **gnictor**, *kneel*: **gĕnu**, *knee*. Fut. part. **nisūrus**: so also compounds. **Nixus** generally in sense of *leaning*, **nisus**, *striving*. **Conitor**, **adnitor**, **enitor**, have both forms frequently (in sense of *bearing children always enixa*).

**-niveo**, only in compound **nigv-**

**cōniveo**, *shut the eyes*, **conīvi**, **conixi** (both rare), **conivĕre**.

<b>nōceo</b> , <i>be hurtful</i>	<b>nōcui</b>	( <b>nōciturus</b> )	<b>nōcĕre</b>	<b>nōc-ĕ-</b>
<b>nosco</b> , <i>get to know</i>	<b>nōvi</b> , <i>I know</i>	<b>nōtum</b>	<b>noscĕre</b>	<b>gno-</b>

**nōtus** only as adj. *known*; fut. part. is not used.

**agnosco**, *recognise*, **cognosco**, *learn*, have supines **agnĭtum**, **cognĭtum**; **ignosco**, *forgive*, **ignōtum**.

<b>nūbo</b> , <i>put on a veil</i>	<b>nupsi</b>	<b>nuptum</b>	<b>nūbĕre</b>	<b>nūb-</b>
------------------------------------	--------------	---------------	---------------	-------------

(as a bride), *be married* Part. **nupta**, *married*

**-nuo**, *nod*, only in compounds: but **nūtus** is used as subst. **nū-annuo**, **annui**, **annuĕre**. **abnuo** has fut. part. **abnuĭturus**.

<b>obliviscor</b> (orig. <i>cover with black</i> ), <i>forget</i>	<b>oblitum</b>	<b>oblivisci</b>	<b>ob-liv-i-</b>
---	----------------	------------------	------------------

<b>occulō</b> , <i>conceal</i>	<b>occului</b>	<b>occultum</b>	<b>occulĕre</b>	<b>ob-cūl-</b>
	<b>ōdi</b> , perf., <i>I hate</i>	( <b>ōsūrus</b> )	<b>ōd-</b>	

**exōsus**, **perōsus** are used with an active meaning as participles, and with **sum**, etc., as perfect.

**-ōleo**, *grow*, intrans., is only used in compounds, and is a different word from **ōleo**, *smell*.

**ābōleo**, *destroy*, **ābōlēvi**, **ābōlĭtum**, **ābōlēre**.

**ābōlesco**, *decay*, **ābōlēvi**, no supine, **ābolescĕre**. So also **inōlesco**.

**ādōlesco**, *grow up*, **ādōlēvi**, **ādolescĕre**, **adultus**, adj. *grown up*.

Present.	Perfect.	Supine.	Pres. Infinitive.	Stem.
<b>ādōleo</b> ( <i>increase</i> ?), <i>offer</i> ( <i>in sacrifice</i> ), <i>burn</i>			<b>adolēvi</b>	<b>ādultum</b>
			<b>ādōlui</b>	<b>ādōlère</b>
<b>obsōlesco</b> , <i>wear out</i> , intr. <b>obsōlēvi</b> , <i>obsolescere</i> , <b>obsōlētus</b> , adj. <i>worn out</i> . So also <b>exōlesco</b> .				

<b>ōleo</b> , <i>smell</i> (intr.)	<b>ōlui</b>		<b>ōlère</b>	<b>ōl-ē-</b>
<b>oportet</b> , <i>it behoves</i>	<b>oportuit</b>		<b>oportère</b>	<b>oport-ē-</b>

Only used in 3rd pers. sing.

**oppērior**. See **pērio**

<b>ordior</b> , <i>begin</i> (trans.)	<b>orsum</b>	<b>ordiri</b>	<b>ord-ī-</b>
<b>ōrior</b> , <i>rise</i>	<b>ortum</b>	<b>ōriri</b>	<b>ōr-ī-</b>

Fut. part. **ōritūrus** ; gerundive **ōriundus** used as adj. *sprung from*. Pres. ind. **ōrēris**, **ōritur**, **ōrimur**, imperf. subj. **orirer**, **orērer**. The compound **adorior** has in pres. ind. **adōriris**, **adōritur**.

<b>pāciscor</b> , <i>bargain</i>	<b>pēpīgi</b>	<b>pactum</b>	<b>pācisci</b>	<b>pāc-</b>
<b>compāciscor</b> or <b>compēciscor</b> has <b>compactum</b> or <b>compec-tum</b> .				

<b>paenītet</b> , <i>it repents</i>	<b>paenītuit</b>		<b>paenītère</b>	<b>paenīt-ē-</b>
-------------------------------------	------------------	--	------------------	------------------

Rarely personal. **paenitendum** is also found. **paenitens** as adj. *penitent*.

<b>pando</b> , <i>spread out</i> , <i>open</i>	<b>pandi</b>	<b>passum</b>	<b>pandère</b>	<b>pand-</b> <b>pād-</b>
---	--------------	---------------	----------------	-----------------------------

**dispando** has **dispansum**, **dispassum**. **Expando**, **expan-sum**.

<b>pango</b> , <i>fasten</i>	<b>pēgi</b>	<b>pactum</b> <b>panctum</b>	<b>pangère</b>	<b>pāg-</b> <b>pang-</b>
------------------------------	-------------	---------------------------------	----------------	-----------------------------

**compingo**, **compēgi**, **compactum**, **compingère**. So **impingo**.  
**oppango**, **oppēgi**, **oppactum**, **oppangère**. **Depango**, **re-pango**, also retain **a**.

<b>parco</b> , <i>be sparing</i>	<b>pēperci</b>	( <b>parsurus</b> )	<b>parcère</b>	<b>parc-</b>
----------------------------------	----------------	---------------------	----------------	--------------

Sometimes **parsi** in early writers.

**comperco**, **compersi**, **compercère**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>pāreo</b> , <i>appear, be obedient.</i>	<b>pārui</b>	( <b>pāriturus</b> )	<b>pārēre</b>	<b>pār-ē-</b>
<b>pārio</b> , <i>get, bring forth</i>	<b>pēpēri</b>	<b>partum</b>	<b>pārēre</b>	<b>pār-i-</b>

**Fut. part. pāriturus.**

**pārens**, a *parent*, is an old participle of this verb.

**compērio** } *ascertain, compēri, compertum, com-*  
**compērior** (rare) } *pērire.*

**rēpērio**, *find, reppēri, rēpertum, rēpērire.*

**pasco**, *pasture, feed* **pāvi** **pastum** **pascēre** **pās-**

**pascor** is used of the animals *feeding*.

**dēpasco** follows **pasco**.

**compesco** (lit. *pasture together* †), *confine, compescui, compescēre* (no supine).

**pātiōr**, *suffer* **passum** **pāti** **pāt-i-**  
**perpētior, perpessus sum, perpēti.**

**pāveo**, *quake with fear* **pāvi** **pāvēre** **pāv-e-**

**pecto**, *comb* **pēxi** (once) **pexum** **pectēre** **pect-**  
**pello**, *push, drive back* **pēpūli** **pulsum** **pellēre** **pell-**

**appello** (esp. of a ship, *put in*), **appūli, appulsum, appellēre**. So the other compounds. **Rēpello** always has **rēppūli** or **rēpūli**.

**pendeo**, *hang, intr.* **pēpendi** **pensum** **pendēre** **pend-e-**  
**pendo**, *weigh, pay, value* **pēpendi** **pensum** **pendēre** **pend-**

Originally *hang, trans.* So **suspendo**, *hang up*.

**-pērio**, only in compounds, except **peritus**, *skilled* **pēr-i-**

**āpērio** (ab *perio* †), *uncover, open, āpērui, āpertum, āpērire.*  
**expērior**, *try, expertum, expēriri.*

**ōpērio** (ob *perio* †), *cover, ōpērui, ōpertum, ōpērire.*

**oppērior**, *wait for, oppertum and opperitum, oppēriri.*





<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>posco</b> , demand	<b>pōposci</b>		<b>poscēre</b>	<b>posc-</b>

Compounds retain reduplication, as **dēpōposci**, **expōposci**.

**possideo**. See **sēdeo**

<b>possum</b> , be able	<b>pōtui</b> (see § 72)	<b>posse</b>	<b>pōtes-</b>
<b>pōtior</b> , be master	<b>pōtitum</b>	<b>pōtīri</b>	<b>pōt-i</b>

In pres. ind. almost always **pōtitur**, **potimur**; imp. subj. **potērer** or **potirer**, and so throughout the tense.

<b>pōto</b> , drink	<b>pōtāvi</b>	<b>pōtum</b>	<b>pōtāre</b>	<b>pōt-ā-</b>
---------------------	---------------	--------------	---------------	---------------

Fut. part. **pōtāturus** and **pōturus**; part. perf. **pōtus**, having drunk.

<b>prandeo</b> , breakfast	<b>prandi</b>	<b>pransum</b>	<b>prandēre</b>	<b>prand-e-</b>
				<b>pransus</b> , having breakfasted.

<b>prēhendo</b> , lay hold of	<b>prēhendi</b>	<b>prēhensum</b>	<b>prēhen-dēre</b>	<b>prehend-</b>
-------------------------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------------	-----------------

Often contracted into **prendo**, etc.

<b>prēmo</b> , press	<b>pressi</b>	<b>pressum</b>	<b>prēmēre</b>	<b>prēm-</b>
----------------------	---------------	----------------	----------------	--------------

**comprimo**, compress, **compressi**, **compressum**, **comprimēre**.

So the other compounds.

**prōficiscor**. See **facio**

<b>pūdet</b> , it shames	{ <b>pūduit</b> <b>pūditum est</b> ( <b>pūditurum</b> ) <b>pūdēre</b> <b>pūd-ē-</b>
--------------------------	--

Only in 3rd pers. sing., but gerund and gerundive are also found. **Pudens** as adj. *modest*.

<b>pungo</b> , prick	<b>pūpūgi</b>	<b>punctum</b>	<b>pungere</b>	{ <b>pūg-</b> <b>pung-</b>
----------------------	---------------	----------------	----------------	-------------------------------

Compounds have for perfect **-punxi**.

<b>quaero</b> , seek, inquire	<b>quaesivi</b>	<b>quaesitum</b>	<b>quaerēre</b>	{ <b>quaes-</b> <b>quaes-i-</b>
-------------------------------	-----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------------------------

**conquiro**, **conquisivi**, **conquisitum**, **conquirēre**. So the other compounds.

**quaeso**, **quaesumus**, *prythee*, are old colloquial forms of 1st pers.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>quătio, shake, trans.</b>		<b>quassum</b>	<b>quătère</b>	<b>quăt-i-</b>
<b>concătio, concussi, concussum, concătère.</b> So the other compounds.				

<b>queo, be able (§ 74)</b>	<b>quīvi</b>	<b>quītum</b>	<b>quīre</b>	<b>quī-</b>
<b>quëror, complain</b>		<b>questum</b>	<b>quëri</b>	<b>quër-</b>
<b>quiesco, rest</b>	<b>quiëvi</b>	<b>quiëtum</b>	<b>quiescère</b>	<b>qui-ë-</b>
<b>rădo, scrape</b>	<b>răsi</b>	<b>răsum</b>	<b>rădère</b>	<b>răd-</b>
<b>răpio, snatch, hurry away, trans.</b>	<b>răpui</b>	<b>raptum</b>	<b>răpère</b>	<b>răp-i-</b>

**arrīpio, seize, arrīpui, arreptum, arrīpère.** So the other compounds.

**rëfert.** See **fëro**

<b>rëgo, keep straight, rule</b>	<b>rexī</b>	<b>rectum</b>	<b>rëgère</b>	<b>rëg-</b>
----------------------------------	-------------	---------------	---------------	-------------

Compounds as **arrīgo, raise, arrexī, arrectum, arrigère.**

So **pergo, continue, perrexī, perrectum, pergère,**  
whence **expërgiscor** (*begin to stretch myself out*), *awake myself, expërectum.*

**surgo (sub-rego), rise, surrexī, surrectum, surgère.**

<b>reor, think</b>		<b>rătum</b>	<b>rëri</b>	<b>ră-</b>
--------------------	--	--------------	-------------	------------

**reor** has no present part.

<b>rëpo, creep</b>	<b>repsi</b>	<b>reptum</b>	<b>rëpère</b>	<b>rëp-</b>
<b>rideo, smile, laugh</b>	<b>risi</b>	<b>risum</b>	<b>ridère</b>	<b>rid-e-</b>
<b>rôdo, gnaw</b>	<b>rôsi</b>	<b>rôsum</b>	<b>rôdère</b>	<b>rôd-</b>
<b>rumpo, break</b>	<b>rûpi</b>	<b>ruptum</b>	<b>rumpère</b>	<b>rûp-</b>
<b>ruo, tumble, dash</b>	<b>rui</b>	<b>-rûtum</b>	<b>ruère</b>	<b>rû-</b>

Generally intrans. Fut. part. (post-Augustan) **ruiturus.**

<b>saepio, hedge in</b>	<b>saepsi</b>	<b>saeptum</b>	<b>saepire</b>	<b>saep-i-</b>
<b>salio</b> } salt		<b>salitum</b>	<b>sallère</b>	<b>sal-i-</b>
<b>sallo</b> }		<b>salsum</b>		<b>sall-</b>
<b>sălio, leap</b>	<b>sălūi</b>	(saltus subst.)	<b>sălire</b>	<b>săl-i-</b>

**desīlio, leap down, desilui, desīlire.** So the other compounds.

**salve, hail!** also **salvēte** inf. **salvēre** and fut. **salvēbis**

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>sancio</b> , <i>hallow, ordain</i>	<b>sanxi</b>	<b>sanctum</b>	<b>sancire</b>	<b>sanc-i-</b>
<b>sancitum</b> (rarely)				
<b>sāpio</b> , <i>have a savour</i>	<b>sāpivi</b>		<b>sāpere</b>	<b>sāp-i-</b>
<i>of, be wise</i>				

**desipio**, *be foolish*, no perf. or sup., **desipere**.

**rēspisco**, *recover senses*, **rēsipi** and **rēsipivi**, **rēsiscere**.

<b>sarcio</b> , <i>patch</i>	<b>sarsi</b>	<b>sartum</b>	<b>sarcire</b>	<b>sarc-i-</b>
<b>sārio</b> , <i>hoe</i>	<b>sarui</b> (once)	<b>saritum</b>	<b>sarire</b>	<b>sar-i-</b>

Also written **sarrio**. Perf. also **sarrivi**.

<b>scalpo</b> , <i>scrape</i>	<b>scalpsi</b>	<b>scalptum</b>	<b>scalpere</b>	<b>scalp-</b>
<b>scando</b> , <i>climb</i>	<b>scandi</b>	<b>scansum</b>	<b>scandere</b>	<b>scand-</b>

**ascendo**, **ascendi**, **ascensum**, **ascendere**. So the other compounds.

<b>scindo</b> , <i>tear, cut</i>	<b>scidi</b>	<b>scissum</b>	<b>scindere</b>	<b>scid-</b>
<b>scisco</b> , <i>enact</i>	<b>scivi</b>	<b>scitum</b>	<b>sciscere</b>	<b>sci-</b>
<b>scribo</b> , <i>write</i>	<b>scripsi</b>	<b>scriptum</b>	<b>scribere</b>	<b>scrib-</b>
<b>sculpo</b> , <i>carve</i> (in stone, etc.)	<b>sculpsi</b>	<b>sculptum</b>	<b>sculpere</b>	<b>sculp-</b>
<b>sēco</b> , <i>cut</i>	<b>sēcui</b>	<b>sectum</b>	<b>sēcāre</b>	<b>sēc-ā-</b>
<b>sēdeo</b> , <i>sit</i>	<b>sēdi</b>	<b>sessum</b>	<b>sēdere</b>	<b>sēd-ē-</b>

**possideo**, *occupy*, **possēdi**, **possessum**, **possidere**. So the other compounds, except **sūpersedeo**, *refrain*, **circumsēdeo**, *sit around*, which do not change the e.

<b>sentio</b> , <i>feel, think</i>	<b>sensi</b>	<b>sensum</b>	<b>sentire</b>	<b>sent-i-</b>
------------------------------------	--------------	---------------	----------------	----------------

**assentior**, **assensus** **sum**, is used as deponent (besides **assentio**).

<b>sēpēlio</b> , <i>bury</i>	<b>sēpēlivi</b>	<b>sēpultum</b>	<b>sēpēlire</b>	<b>sēpēl-i-</b>
<b>sēquor</b> , <i>follow</i>		<b>sēcutum</b>	<b>sēqui</b>	<b>sēqu-</b>
<b>sēro</b> , <i>sow, plant</i>	<b>sēvi</b>	<b>sātum</b>	<b>sērere</b>	<b>sā-</b>
<b>sēro</b> , <i>put in rows</i>		( <b>serta</b> , <i>garlands</i> )	<b>sērere</b>	<b>sēr-</b>

Compounds as **consēro**, *join*, **consērui**, **consertum**, **consērere**.

<b>serpo</b> , <i>crawl</i>	<b>serpsi</b>	<b>serptum</b>	<b>serpere</b>	<b>serp-</b>
<b>sido</b> , <i>settle, intr.</i>	<b>sīdi</b>		<b>sīdere</b>	<b>sīd-</b>

**sēdi** and **sessum** from **sēdeo** are the usual perfect and supine, and so in the compounds.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>sīno</b> , put, leave off	<b>sīvi</b>	<b>sītum</b>	<b>sīnēre</b>	<b>sī-</b>

In subj. perf. **sīrim**, **sīris**, **sīrit**, **sīrint**.

**dēsīno**, **dēsii** (2, **desisti**, 3, **desiit**, pluperf. **desiēram**, perf. subj. **dēsīerim**), **dēsītum**, **dēsīnēre**. (Cicero and Caesar generally use **destiti** from **desisto** for perf.)

**sisto**, set, stay, trans. **stīti** (rare) **stātum** **sistēre** **stā-**

**desisto**, leave off, **destīti**, **destītum**, **desistere**. So the compounds, all being intransitive. The reduplication is retained.

**sōleo**, be wont **sōlītum** **sōlēre** **sōl-ē-**

Perf. **sōlītus sum**, I was accustomed.

**solvo**, loose, pay **solvi** **sōlūtum** **solvēre** **solv-**

Perf. often **sōlūi** in poets, and so in compounds.

**sōno**, sound **sōnui** **sōnītum** **sōnāre** **sōn-ā-**

Fut. part. **sōnātūrus** (once in Hor.) In prae-Augustan poets sometimes **sonēre**, **sonīt**, **sonunt**.

**sorbeo**, sup up, suck in **sorbui** (sorbītio, subst.) **sorbēre** **sorb-ē-**

**absorbeo**, **absorbui**, **absorbēre**. So other compounds. (Rarely **absorpsi**, **exsorpsi**.)

**spargo**, scatter, be-sprinkle **sparsi** **sparsum** **spargēre** **sparg-**

Compounds as **conspargo**, **consparsi**, **conspersum**, **conspargēre**.

**spēcio** (or **spicio** ?) look, only in Plautus **spēc-i-**

**aspicio**, **asperi**, **aspectum**, **aspicere**. So the other compounds.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>sperno</b> , <i>reject, despise</i>	<b>sprēvi</b>	<b>sprētum</b>	<b>spernere</b>	{ <b>spēr-</b> <b>sprē-</b>
<b>spondeo</b> , <i>pledge oneself</i>	<b>spōpondi</b>	<b>sponsum</b>	<b>spondere</b>	
<b>stātuo</b> , <i>set up, settle (with oneself)</i>	<b>stātui</b>	<b>stātūtum</b>	<b>stātuere</b>	<b>statū-</b>
<b>sterno</b> , <i>throw on the ground, cover</i>	<b>strāvi</b>	<b>strātum</b>	<b>sternere</b>	{ <b>ster-</b> <b>strā-</b>
<b>sterto</b> , <i>snore</i>	<b>stertui</b>		<b>stertere</b>	
<b>stinguo</b> (rare), <i>stamp, extinguish</i>			<b>stinguere</b>	<b>stingu-</b>
<b>exstinguo, exstinxi, exstinctum, exstinguere.</b> So the other compounds.				

**sto**, *stand*      **stēti**      **stātum**      **stāre**      **stā-**  
**praesto**, *be superior, warrant, render*, **praestiti, praestatum**  
 (also **praestitum**), **praestāre**. The other compounds have fut. part. **-staturus** (**constāturus**, Luc. Mart.), but no supine: those with disyllabic prepositions retain **e** in the perf. (e.g. **circumstēti**).

**strēpo**, *make a din*      **strēpui**      **strēpitum**      **strēpere**      **strēp-**  
**strideo**, *hiss, screech*      **stridi**           **stridere**      **strid-e-**

A consonantal form (e.g. **stridunt, stridere**) is found in Augustan poets.

<b>stringo</b> , <i>strip, graze, draw tight</i>	<b>strinxi</b>	<b>strictum</b>	<b>stringere</b>	{ <b>strīg-</b> <b>string-</b>
<b>struo</b> , <i>heap up, build</i>	<b>struxi</b>	<b>structum</b>	<b>struere</b>	
<b>suādeo</b> , <i>recommend</i>	<b>suāsi</b>	<b>suāsum</b>	<b>suādere</b>	<b>suād-e-</b>
<b>suesco</b> , <i>accustom oneself</i>	<b>suēvi</b>	<b>suētum</b>	<b>suescere</b>	<b>sue-</b>
<b>sūgo</b> , <i>suck</i>	<b>suxi</b>	<b>suctum</b>	<b>sūgere</b>	<b>sūg-</b>
<b>tāceo</b> , <i>be silent</i>	<b>tācui</b>	<b>tācītum</b>	<b>tācere</b>	<b>tāc-e-</b>
<b>taedet</b> , <i>it weariseth</i>	<b>taesum est</b>			<b>taed-e-</b>

For perf. the compound **pertaesum est** is more common.

**tango**, *touch*      **tētigi**      **tactum**      **tangere**      **tāg-**  
**attingo, attigi, attactum, attingere.** So the other compounds.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
tēgo, <i>cover</i>	texi	tectum	tēgere	tēg-
temno, <i>despise</i>	-tempsi	-temptum	temnere	tem-
(only in the compound contemno)				
tendo, <i>stretch, tend</i>	tētendi	tentum	tendere	tend-

Compounds have -tensum occasionally.

tēneo, <i>hold</i>	tēnui	tentum (rare)	tenere	tēn-ē
--------------------	-------	---------------	--------	-------

dētīneo, dētīnui, dētentum, dētīnere. So the other compounds.

tergeo, <i>wipe</i>	tersi	tersum	tergere	terg-e
---------------------	-------	--------	---------	--------

A consonantal stem (*e.g.* tergit, terguntur) is also found sometimes.

tēro, <i>rub</i>	trīvi	tritum	tērere	{ tēr- trī-
terreo, <i>frighten</i>	terrui	terrītum	terrere	terr-ē
texo, <i>weave</i>	texui	textum	texere	tex-
tingo	{ dip, dye	tinxi	{ tingere tinguere	tingu-
tinguo				
tollo, <i>lift up, re- move</i>	(sustūli)	(sublatum)	tollere	toll-

tūli (in prae-August. poets tētūli) and latum (for tlatum) are the proper perf. and supine: but as these are taken by fēro, tollo takes the perf. and supine of its compound sustollo.

The compounds have no perf. or supine.

tondeo, <i>shear</i>	tōtondi	tonsum	tondere	tond-e
tōno, <i>thunder</i>	tōnui	tōnitum	tōnare	tōn-ā
torqueo, <i>twist, whirl</i>	torsi	tortum	torquere	torqu-e
torreo, <i>roast</i>	torrui	tostum	torrere	tors-e
trāho, <i>drag</i>	traxi	tractum	trāhere	trāh-
trēmo, <i>tremble</i>	trēmui		trēmere	trēm-
trūdo, <i>thrust</i>	trūsi	trūsum	trūdere	trūd-
tūeor, <i>look at, protect</i>		{ tūtum tuītum	tuēri	tu-ē

RECEIVED

**tūtus**, adj. *safe*.

**tūtātus sum** (from **tutor**) is generally used as perfect ;  
**tūtus** or **tuitus sum** are rare. There is also a present  
 with stem in -u (e.g. **tuīmur**, **contuor**, etc.)

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>tundo</b> , <i>thump</i>	<b>tūtūdi</b>	{ <b>tūsum</b> <b>tunsum</b>	<b>tundere</b>	<b>tūd-</b>

**contundo**, **contūdi**, **contūsum**, **contundere**. So **pertundo**.

<b>turgeo</b> , <i>swell</i>	<b>tursi</b> (very rare)	<b>turgere</b>	<b>turg-e-</b>
<b>vādo</b> , <i>go</i>		<b>vādere</b>	<b>vād-</b>

**invādo**, **invāsi**, **invāsum**, **invādere**. So other compounds.

<b>vāleo</b> , <i>be strong</i>	<b>vālui</b>	( <b>vālitūrus</b> ) <b>vālere</b>	<b>vāl-ē-</b>
<b>vēho</b> , <i>carry</i>	<b>vexi</b>	<b>vectum</b>	<b>vēh-ēre</b>

Pres. part. and gerund also used intransitively, *riding*.

<b>vello</b> , <i>pull, pluck</i>	<b>velli</b>	<b>vulsum</b>	<b>vellere</b>	<b>vell-</b>
-----------------------------------	--------------	---------------	----------------	--------------

**vulsi**, both in simple and compounds, is sometimes found.

**vēndo**, *sell*. See **do**

**vēneo**, *be sold*. See **eo**

<b>vēnio</b> , <i>come</i>	<b>vēni</b>	<b>ventum</b>	<b>vēnire</b>	<b>vēn-i-</b>
<b>vēreor</b> , <i>be awed at</i>		<b>vērītum</b>	<b>vērēri</b>	<b>vēr-e-</b>
<b>vergo</b> , <i>incline</i>			<b>vergere</b>	<b>verg-</b>
<b>verro</b> , <i>brush</i>	<b>verri</b> (rare)	<b>versum</b>	<b>verrere</b>	<b>verr-</b>
<b>verto</b> , <i>turn</i>	<b>verti</b>	<b>versum</b>	<b>vertere</b>	<b>vert-</b>

So the compounds generally, but

**divertor**, *put up* (at an inn), **diverti** (perf.), **diversum**,  
**diverti** (inf.)

**rēvertor**, *return*, perf. **reverti**, **reversum**, **reverti** (inf.),  
**reversus**, *having returned*.

**praevertor**, *attend to first*, is entirely deponent.

<b>vescor</b> , <i>feed oneself</i>		<b>vesci</b>	<b>vesc-</b>
<b>vēto</b> , <i>forbid</i>	<b>vētūi</b>	<b>vētītum</b>	<b>vētāre</b>

Persius has a perfect **vētāvi**.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>
<b>video, see</b>	<b>vidi</b>	<b>visum</b>	<b>vidēre</b>	<b>vid-e-</b>

**videor, visum, vidēri**, very common in sense of *seem*.

<b>vieo, plait (twigs, etc.)</b>	<b>viētum</b>	<b>viēre</b>	<b>vi-e-</b>
----------------------------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

Part. **viētus** *shrivelled*.

<b>vincio, bind</b>	<b>vinxi</b>	<b>vinctum</b>	<b>vincire</b>	<b>vinc-i-</b>
<b>vinco, conquer</b>	<b>vici</b>	<b>victum</b>	<b>vincere</b>	<b>vic-</b>
<b>viso, visit</b>	<b>visi</b>		<b>visere</b>	<b>vis-</b>
<b>vivo, live</b>	<b>vixi</b>	<b>victum</b>	<b>vivere</b>	<b>vigv-</b>
<b>ulciscor, avenge oneself on, avenge</b>		<b>ultum</b>	<b>ulcisci</b>	<b>ulc-</b>

<b>ungo</b> } <i>grease</i>	<b>unxi</b>	<b>unctum</b>	{ <b>ungere</b>	<b>ungu-</b>
<b>unguo</b>			{ <b>ungere</b>	
<b>volo, will</b>	<b>völui</b>		<b>velle</b>	<b>völ-</b>

So its compounds **nölo, mälo** ; see § 73.

<b>volvo, roll</b>	<b>volvi</b>	<b>völütum</b>	<b>volvère</b>	<b>volv-</b>
--------------------	--------------	----------------	----------------	--------------

**involve** and **evolve** sometimes have perf. **-völüi**.

<b>vömo, vomit</b>	<b>vömui</b>	<b>vömütum</b>	<b>vömère</b>	<b>vöm-</b>
<b>vöveo, vow</b>	<b>vövi</b>	<b>vötum</b>	<b>vövère</b>	<b>vöv-e-</b>
<b>urgeo, push, press</b>	<b>ursi</b>		<b>urgere</b>	<b>urg-e-</b>
<b>üro, burn</b>	<b>ussi</b>	<b>ustum</b>	<b>ürere</b>	<b>üs-</b>

**amb-üro, ambussi, ambustum, ambürere**, whence perhaps by a wrong division **comburo**, and **bustum**.

Other compounds (**exüro**, etc.) follow the usual form.

<b>ütor, avail oneself, make use</b>	<b>üsum</b>	<b>üti</b>	<b>üt-</b>
--------------------------------------	-------------	------------	------------

81. The following verbs (with many others) are used as deponents ; but some of them are also used, especially in the past participle, as passives:—

<b>adsentiri, assent ; also passive</b>	<b>aucüpari, catch at</b>
<b>äpisci, get</b>	<b>augürari, take omens</b>
<b>arbitrari, judge</b>	<b>blandiri, play the coax</b>



<i>cōmītari</i> , accompany; also passive	<i>lūdificari</i> , make sport of
<i>commīnisci</i> , devise	<i>mēdicari</i> , apply remedies;
<i>compēri</i> , find out; usually	usually medicare
passive	<i>mēditari</i> , meditate; meditatus
<i>contemplari</i> , contemplate	also passive
<i>crimīnari</i> , accuse	<i>mentiri</i> , tell a lie; mentitus
<i>cunctari</i> , delay	also passive
<i>dignari</i> , think worthy; dignatus	<i>mērerī</i> , deserve, earn; merere
also passive	more usually earn
<i>dōminari</i> , play the lord	<i>mōdērari</i> , rule; mōderatus
<i>exēcari</i> , curse; execratus also	also passive
passive	<i>mōdūlari</i> , modulate; mōdulatus
<i>exordī</i> , commence speaking	also passive
<i>expēri</i> , try; expertus also	<i>oblivisci</i> , forget
passive	<i>ōpinari</i> , be of opinion
<i>fāri</i> , speak; effatus also passive	<i>pācisci</i> , bargain; pactus also
<i>fāteri</i> , confess	passive
<i>fēnērari</i> , lend money	<i>partiri</i> , share; also partire
<i>frustrari</i> , disappoint; also pas-	<i>pōpūlari</i> , lay waste; also popu-
sive	lare
<i>glōriari</i> , boast	<i>pūniri</i> , punish; usually punire
<i>grāvāri</i> , take ill	<i>sectari</i> , follow
<i>hortari</i> , exhort	<i>sortiri</i> , cast lots
<i>īmītari</i> , imitate; imitatus also	<i>testīficari</i> , testari, declare, call
passive	to witness; also passive in par-
<i>interpretari</i> , interpret; inter-	ticipale
pretatus, also passive	<i>tūtari</i> , to defend
<i>largiri</i> , make gifts	<i>vēnērari</i> , worship
<i>lucrari</i> , make gain	<i>ulcisci</i> , avenge
<i>luctari</i> , struggle	

Some past participles are used with an active sense as if deponents, though the usual form of the verb is active.

<i>ādultus</i> , grown up	<i>ōsus</i> , exōsus, pērōsus, having
<i>cēnatus</i> , having dined	hated
<i>jūrat</i> , having sworn; conjū-	<i>plācītus</i> , having pleased
tus, having conspired	<i>pōtus</i> , having drunk
<i>nupta</i> , married	<i>pransus</i> , having breakfasted
<i>occāsus</i> , of the sun having	<i>quiētus</i> , at rest
sunk	<i>suētus</i> , accustomed
	<i>tācītus</i> , silent

## SYNTAX

82. When we speak we either name a person or thing, or we declare something of a person or thing.

1. Names of persons or things are in Grammar called Nouns.

There are many kinds of objects, and therefore many kinds of nouns, as **rex**, *king* ; **Roma**, *Rome* ; **flos**, *flower* ; **terra**, *land* ; **exercitus**, *army* ; **mens**, *mind* ; **justitia**, *justice*.

One noun is often not enough to mark out the particular object which we have in mind. Another noun is then added, as **rex Romulus**, *King Romulus* ; **urbs Roma**, *the city Rome*.

Such an additional noun (or name) is called an *attribute* to the first noun, which in this use is called a Substantive.

Some nouns are generally used as such additional names, and are therefore called Adjectives. They describe an object by some particular quality or appearance which it has, as **albus flos**, *white flower* ; **magnus exercitus**, *great army*.

Adjectives in Latin having inflexions for gender as well as number can be used by themselves, like other nouns, as substantives. Thus **albus** is *white he* ; **alba**, *white she* ; **album**, *white thing* ; **albi**, *white males* ; **albae**, *white females* ; **alba**, *white things*. Other nouns, i.e. substantives, are treated as having usually only one gender.

83. 2. Naming an object is generally not enough. We wish to say something about it. Every complete saying (called in Grammar a *sentence*) contains at least two ideas :

(a) The person or thing of which we speak, called the *Subject*.

(b) Our declaration respecting it, called the *Predicate*.

A complete thought is expressed most simply either (a) by a verb, or (b) by two nouns.

(a) A verb contains in its personal suffixes the subject, in its stem the predicate, as *curr-o*, *I run* ; *curr-it*, *he (she, it) runs* ; *ama-mus*, *we love* ; *ama-tis*, *ye love* ; *splende-nt*, *they shine*.

The first and second person require no further definition, but the third person is very vague. The name of the person or thing intended is usually added in the nominative case, as *equus currit*, (*the*) *horse runs* (literally *horse-he run-he*) ; *flores splendent*, *flowers shine*.

(b) When the thought is expressed by two nouns, one is subject, the other—usually an adjective—is predicate. But to make it clear that the adjective (or other noun) is not an attribute, but is a predicate, some part of the verb *sum* is generally used. Thus *equus albus* may mean *white horse*, or *horse is white* ; *equus est albus* shows that *albus* is predicate, not attribute of *equus*. So *Julius est consul*, *Julius is consul* ; *exercitus erat magnus*, *the army was large* ; *Roma fuit urbs*, *Rome was a city*, or *the city was Rome*.

If the subject of a verb is expressed, the verb has (usually) the same number and person as the subject, e.g. *ego amo*, *I love* ; *flores rubent*, *flowers are red* ; *vos fugitis*, *you are flying*.

## PRINCIPAL USE OF CASES

**84.** The *nominative* denotes the subject of the sentence, as **Julius regnat**, *Julius reigns*.

The *accusative*, *dative*, and *ablative* are principally used with verbs.

The *accusative* denotes the direct object of a verb's action, *e.g.*—

**Julius regit urbem**, *Julius rules the city*.

**Carpo florem**, *I pluck a flower*.

**Arant terram**, *They plough the land*.

The *dative* denotes the indirect object, *i.e.* the person or thing indirectly affected by the verb's action. A transitive verb has often such an indirect object besides the direct object; an intransitive verb has such an indirect object only, as

**Carpo florem tibi**, *I pluck the flower for thee*.

**Arant terram hostibus**, *They plough the land for the enemies*.

**Flos splendet tibi**, *The flower shines for thee*.

**Pater sum tibi**, *I am father to you*.

The *ablative* denotes the instrument or cause or other attendant circumstances of the verb's action, as

**Carpo florem manu**, *I pluck the flower with my hand*.

**Perit timore**, *He perishes from fright*.

RESE  
UNIVERSITY

The *genitive* is used with nouns rather than with verbs, and denotes the possessor or object or class of a person or thing, as

**Marci servus,** *Marcus's slave.*

**Floris splendor,** *The flower's brightness.*

**Timor periculi,** *Fear of risk.*

**Fortissimus militum,** *Bravest (he) of the soldiers.*

All these cases have other uses as well as those named. (See below.)

The case of a declinable attribute or predicate is the same as that of the substantive or subject.

The gender and number of an adjective is usually the same as that of the substantive of which it is attribute or predicate.

## NOMINATIVE

85. The NOMINATIVE is used to express—

1. Person or thing spoken of, *i.e.* the subject of the sentence—

**Dixit Claudius,** *Claudius spoke.*

**Crescit amor,** *Love grows.*

2. Person or thing spoken to—

**Musa veni,** *Come, O muse.*

**Audite Romani,** *Listen, ye Romans.*

In *o* stems the shorter form called the VOCATIVE is used—

**Marce cave,** *Marcus, beware.*

**Quid ais, Claudī?** *What sayest thou, Claudius?*

## ACCUSATIVE

86. The ACCUSATIVE is used to express—

1. Direct object of a transitive verb—

**Fer opem,** *Bring help.*

**Urit flamma domos,** *Flame burns the houses.*

**Aquilas fugiunt columbae,** *Doves flee eagles.*

2. Place towards which—

**Mitto vos domum,** *I send you home.*

**Romam veniunt,** *They come to Rome.*

3. Space over which—

**Pedem unum processit,** *He stepped forward (a distance of) one foot.*

**Nix quattuor pedes alta,** *Snow four feet deep.*

4. Time during which—

**Diem totum stertebat,** *He was snoring a whole day.*

**Vixerunt viginti annos,** *They lived twenty years.*

5. Extent of action—

**Nos aliquid Rutulos juvimus,** *We have helped the Rutulians somewhat.*

**Tremit artus,** *He trembles all over his limbs.*

Often with a substantive of like meaning to the verb—

**Cur non eosdem cursus cucurrerunt?** *Why have they not run the same courses?*

**Itque reditque viam,** *He goes and returns the road.*

## DATIVE

## 87. 1. Person to or for whom (indirect object)—

**Hoc tibi facio**, *I do this for you.*

**Dat librum illi**, *He gives him the book.*

**Nocet aqua saxis**, *Water is hurtful to the rocks.*

**Omnibus mors divitias aufert**, *Death takes away riches (for, i.e.) from all.*

2. This dative is frequently used with the verb **esse** to denote the possessor or the agent—

Possessor—**Est mihi pater**, *There is a father for me, i.e. I have a father.*

**Longae regibus sunt manus**, *Kings have long hands.*

Agent—**Haec mihi sunt dicta**, *These things are for me things spoken, i.e. I have said this.*

**Hoc Caesari fuit agendum**, *This was for Caesar a thing to do, i.e. Caesar had to do this.*

3. Purpose for which (adjectival or predicative dative).  
An indirect object is often used in same sentence—

**Hoc mihi curae est**, *This is a matter of anxiety to me.*

**Paupertatem probro habent**, *They treat poverty as disgraceful.*

**Equitatum auxilio Caesari mittunt**, *They send the cavalry as help to Caesar.*

**Rem publicam quaestui habet**, *He makes a trade of politics.*

ABLATIVE

88. 1. Instrument or price—

**Gladio regem ferit,** *He strikes the king with a sword.*

**Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tutantur,** *Bulls defend themselves with horns, boars with tusks, lions by biting.*

**Vendidit hic auro patriam,** *This man sold his country for gold.*

2. Cause—

**Maerore et lacrimis senescebat,** *He grew old from grief and tears.*

**Paene ille timore, ego risu corruui,** *He all but collapsed from fear, I from laughter.*

3. Part concerned—

**Aeger pedibus,** *Ill in the feet.*

**Mancipiis locuples,** *Rich in slaves.*

4. Manner and circumstances ; usually with an attribute—

**Nullis impedimentis ibat,** *He was marching without baggage.*

**Aequo animo hoc tuli,** *I bore this with an even mind.*

The ablative of circumstances is very common in Latin with a participle, especially in the passive voice, as—

**Regibus exactis consules creati sunt,** *When the kings had been driven out, consuls were elected.*



## 5. Quality or description—

**Qua facie fuit ?** (*Of what face was he?*) *what was he like in the face?*

**Agessilaus statura fuit humili et corpore exiguo,**  
*Agessilaus was of low stature and small body (or low in stature and small in body).*

## 6. With comparatives it expresses both (a) the standard of comparison and (b) the measure—

(a) **Quid durius est saxo ? quid mollius unda ?**  
*What is harder than stone ? what softer than water ?*

(b) **Tanto major caedes fuit,** *So much the greater was the slaughter.*

## 7. Place whence—

**Romā fūgit,** *He fled from Rome.*

**Senex rure venit,** *The old man comes from the country.*

## 8. Place where is expressed by the locative in -o and -a stems, and by the ablative in others—

**Rhodi negotiatur,** *He is trading at Rhodes.*

**Est Capuae,** *He is at Capua.*

But sometimes an ablative is used, as—

**Romae Tibur amo,** *Tibure Romam,* *At Rome I love Tibur, at Tibur I love Rome.*

**Bellum terra marique comparat,** *He is preparing war by land and sea.*

## 9. Time when or within which—

**Aedes Kalendis vota est,** *The temple was vowed on the Kalends.*

**Tribus horis Romam pervēnit,** *In three hours he reached Rome.*

## GENITIVE

89. 1. Person or thing possessing or causing (possessive genitive)—

**Crassi filius**, *Crassus's son*.

**Hectoris Andromache**, *Hector's (wife) Andromache*.

**Cornua lunae**, *The Moon's horns*.

2. Divided whole (partitive genitive)—

**Fortissimus Graecorum**, *Bravest of Greeks*.

**Parum prudentiae**, *But little (of) prudence*.

3. Quality or description—

**Fossa centum pedum**, *A hundred-foot ditch (i.e. in length)*.

**Vir consili magni**, *A man of great policy*.

4. Object of action, after nouns—

**Vir tenax propositi**, *A man firm of purpose*.

**Timor hostium**, *Fear of the enemies*.

5. Secondary object to certain verbs of accusing, remembering, pitying, filling, etc.—

**Admonuit illum sceleris**, *He reminded him of his wickedness*.

**Accusat Marcum furti**, *He accuses Marcus of theft*.

**Taedet me vitae**, *I am weary of life (lit. it irks me of life)*.

**Implent fossam sanguinis**, *They fill the ditch with blood*.

## INFINITIVE

90. The infinitive is an indeclinable verbal substantive, and is used in some respects as a verb, in other respects as a noun. It is found chiefly as—

1. Object to a verb, especially verbs of will, power, duty, custom, etc. (The subject of the infinitive is usually the same as the subject of the verb.)

**Debeo venire**, *I ought to come.*

**Loqui didicerat**, *He had learnt to talk.*

**Vincere scis, Hannibal ; victoria uti nescis**, *You understand winning, Hannibal ; you do not understand using a victory.*

2. With a subject in the accusative, the two together being the object of a verb. (In English 'that' with a finite verb is often used.)

**Scio te loqui**, *I know of your talking.*

**Dicit se abire**, *He says he is going away.*

3. Subject to a verb, either by itself or with an accusative—

**Certum est mihi dicere**, *I am determined to speak.*

**Te venire pergratum est**, *It is very pleasant that you are coming, or your coming is very pleasant to me.*

## GERUNDS, GERUNDIVE, SUPINE

91. 1. The oblique cases of the gerund are used as if they were the genitive, dative, and ablative of the infinitive. The accusative is used only with prepositions—

**Avidus loquendi**, *Greedy of talk.*

**Hi scribendo adfuerunt**, *These were present at the writing.*

**Caesar dando, Cato nihil largiendo gloriam adeptus est,** *Caesar gained glory by giving, Cato by making no largesses.*

**Haec ad judicandum sunt facillima,** *These matters are very easy to judge.*

2. The gerundive is used often in place of the gerund, when the gerund would have a direct object. The object is then attracted into the case of the gerund, and the gerundive put in the gender and number of this object—

**Consilium imitant urbis delendae et civium trucidandorum** *for urbem delendi et cives trucidandi*, *They were forming a plan for destroying the city and butchering the citizens.*

**Decem viros litibus judicandis creavit,** *He appointed a commission of ten for judging suits.*

3. In the nominative the gerund is used as subject to **est**; the gerundive is used as predicate to what would otherwise have been object to the gerund—

**Est mihi ambulandum,** *I must walk (lit. Walking is for me).*

**Haec sunt agenda** *for Haec est agendum*, *These things must be done.*

**Urbs defendenda est** *for Defendendum est urbem*, *The city must be defended.*

4. The accusative of verbal substantives in **-us** (i.e. the supine in **-um**) is used after a verb of motion, and often has itself an object—

**Haec risum veni,** *Come and (lit. to) have a laugh at these things.*

**Questum injurias eo,** *I am going to complain of the wrongs.*

## PARTICIPLES

92. The Participles are verbal adjectives, and take direct and indirect objects. The present and future participles are active; the past participle is passive unless the verb be a deponent, in which case it is usually active, sometimes either active or passive—

**Venio agros visurus**, *I am coming to see the lands.*

**Vidit consulem exercitui imperantem**, *He saw the consul commanding the army.*

**Consule interfecto, haec locutus est**, *On the consul being killed, he spoke thus.*

## INDECLINABLE WORDS

93. Adverbs are used with verbs and adjectives—

**Bene dicit**, *He says well.*

**Valde justus**, *Very just (man).*

**Res acute dictae**, *Sharp sayings (lit. things sharply said).*

Some adverbs are also used as prepositions.

94. Prepositions are used with verbs in composition, and with nouns in the accusative and ablative cases.

With verbs, as—

**venio**, *I come.*

**devenio**, *I come down.*

**advenio**, *I come to.*

**subvenio**, *I come up.*

**pervenio**, *I come through.*

**evenio**, *I come out, etc.*

The principal prepositions

With accusative case only are—

**ad**, *to.*

**adversus**, *towards.*

**ante**, *before.*

**apud**, *at.*

**circum**, *round.*

**clam**, *unknown to.*

**erga**, *towards.*

**ob**, *on account of.*

**pōnes**, *in power of.*

**per**, *through.*

<b>post</b> , <i>behind.</i>	<b>ultra</b> , <i>beyond.</i>
<b>prope</b> , <i>near.</i>	<b>extra</b> , <i>outside.</i>
<b>secundum</b> , <i>following.</i>	<b>intra</b> , <i>within.</i>
<b>inter</b> , <i>between.</i>	<b>contra</b> , <i>against.</i>
<b>praeter</b> , <i>beside.</i>	<b>supra</b> , <i>above.</i>
<b>propter</b> , <i>near.</i>	<b>infra</b> , <i>below.</i>
<b>trans</b> , <i>across.</i>	<b>juxta</b> , <i>near.</i>
<b>citra</b> , <i>on this side of.</i>	

With ablative case only—

<b>ab</b> or <b>a</b> , <i>from.</i>	<b>prae</b> , <i>in front of.</i>
<b>cum</b> , <i>with.</i>	<b>pro</b> , <i>for.</i>
<b>de</b> , <i>down from.</i>	<b>sine</b> , <i>without.</i>
<b>ex</b> or <b>e</b> , <i>out of.</i>	

With accusative and ablative—

**in**, *in*; **sub**, *subter*, *under*; **super**, *above*:

The accusative is used when motion towards is implied, the ablative when rest at is implied—

**In jus ducere**, *To lead into court.*

**In jure res est**, *The matter is in court.*

**Sub montem ibat**, *He was coming to the foot of the mountain.*

**Sub monte consedit**, *He sat down at the foot of the mountain.*

95. Conjunctions—**et**, **-que** (appended to a word), **atque** or **ac**, *and*; **sed**, *at*, *but*; **autem**, *however*; **tamen**, *yet*; **aut**, **vel**, **-ve** (appended to a word), *or*; **seu**, *whether*, *or*.

Negative particles—**non**, **haud**, *not*; **nec** or **neque**, *neither*, *nor*; **nē**, *not*, *lest*; **ni**, **nisi**, *unless*.

Interrogative—**-nē** (appended to another word) puts a simple question; **nonne** expects answer *yes*; **num** expects answer *no*; **utrum** . . . **an**, *whether* . . . *or*.

An affirmative answer is given by **etiam**, **ita**, **vero**, etc.; a negative by **non**, **minime**.

RESERVED  
UNIVERSITY  
CLUB

## USE OF VERB INFLEXIONS. INFLEXIONS OF VOICE

**96.** VERBS with ACTIVE inflexions are of two classes, TRANSITIVE and INTRANSITIVE. Some verbs belong to both.

TRANSITIVE verbs express an action conceived in connexion with an object upon which it is exercised, *e.g.* **amo**, *I love*; **moneo**, *I warn*; **audio**, *I hear*; **ēdo**, *I eat*; **pello**, *I push*; **rego**, *I guide*; **tolero**, *I bear*; **uro**, *I burn*; **laedo**, *I wound*.

But it is not necessary that the object should be actually expressed, *e.g.* **edo**, *I eat*, does not cease to be a transitive verb because no food is specified.

INTRANSITIVE (or NEUTER) verbs express a state of being, or an action not conceived in connexion with any object, as thereby affected, *e.g.* **curro**, *I run*; **horreo**, *I shiver*; **gaudeo**, *I rejoice*; **praesum**, *I am at the head*; **ardeo**, *I am on fire*; **noceo**, *I am hurtful*.

Such a state or action may affect other persons or things indirectly, and this indirect object may be expressed in an oblique case, usually the dative, just as a similarly indirect object may be expressed with a transitive verb, *e.g.* **mihi gaudeo**, *non tibi*, *I rejoice for myself, not for you*; **praesum exercitui**, *I am at the head of the army*.

**97.** Verbs with PASSIVE inflexions are of two classes, viz. verbs which have also an active voice, and verbs which have no (corresponding) active voice. The latter are called DEPONENTS. (See list on p. 107.)

In verbs which have also an active voice, passive inflexions are used principally to bring into prominence either the object of the action by making it the subject of the sentence, or the occurrence of the action, without

specifying the agent. Thus **vincit Gallos**, *he conquers the Gauls*; **Galli vincuntur**, *the Gauls are conquered*; **vincitur**, *a victory is gained*.

If the object of the action be a person or thing, *i.e.* if the verb be transitive, the passive may be used in both numbers and all three persons. Thus, **laedo**, *I wound*, may have for object **me**, **te**, **eum** (**eam**, **id**), **nos**, **vos**, **eos** (**eas**, **ea**). Consequently in the passive we may have (**ego**) **laedor**, (**tu**) **laederis**, (**is**, **ea**, **id**) **laeditur**, (**nos**) **laedimur**, (**vos**) **laedimini**, (**ei**, **eae**, **ea**) **laeduntur**, *I am (being) wounded, thou art wounded, etc.*

If the verb be intransitive, and therefore express merely the existence or occurrence of an action, the passive is used in the third person singular only. Thus **noceo**, *I am hurtful, I do hurt*; **nocetur**, *hurtfulness exists, hurt is (being) done*; **eo**, *I go*; **itur**, *going takes place, is (being) done*; **suadebo**, *I will give advice*; **suadebitur**, *advice will be given*.

98. Besides the more usual case, in which the subject is acted on by others, passive inflexions are sometimes used in speaking: (1) of an action done by the subject to himself; and more frequently (2) of an action experienced without any specified external agency, *e.g.*—

(1) **cingor**, **accingor**, *I gird myself*; **dedor**, *give myself up*; **erigor**, *raise myself*; **exerceor**, *exercise myself*.

(2) corresponding in English to verbs used intransitively: **alor**, *I feed*; **corrumpor**, *spoil*; **delector**, *delight*; **findor**, *split*; **lavor**, *bathe*; **moveor**, *move*; **mutor**, *change*.

The simple import of the passive inflexions is the same in all these cases, *viz.* that the subject is also the object of the action.

DEPONENTS have passive inflexions, but the meaning and construction of verbs with active inflexions. Some



deponents are transitive, *e.g. fateor, I confess*; some intransitive, *e.g. epulor, I banquet*.

99. In the CONSTRUCTION of passive verbs several points require notice.

If a transitive verb be changed from the active to the passive voice, the following additional changes are required, if the sentence is to express the same fact as it expressed with the active form.

(a) The object of the active verb becomes subject to the passive verb.

(b) Any word containing a fuller description of the object (a secondary predicate) changes from the accusative to the nominative.

(c) The agent (subject of the active verb) is put in the ablative with the prep. *ab*.

<i>e.g. Lucius Marcum</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{laedit} \\ \text{Druso adjuto-} \\ \text{rem dedit} \\ \text{consulem esse} \\ \text{dicit} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Lucius</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{wounds Marcus.} \\ \text{gave Marcus to Drusus} \\ \text{as a helper.} \\ \text{says Marcus is consul.} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Marcus a Lucio</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{laeditur} \\ \text{Druso adjutor} \\ \text{datus est} \\ \text{consul esse dicitur} \end{array} \right.$	<i>Marcus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is being wounded by} \\ \text{Lucius.} \\ \text{was given by Lucius to} \\ \text{Drusus as a helper.} \\ \text{is being said by Lucius} \\ \text{to be consul.} \end{array} \right.$

An intransitive verb is not used in the passive except impersonally, and no further change is required, except usually the omission of the agent. (If the agent is expressed, it will be usually in the ablative with *ab* as above.)

**Persuasum est homini; factum est; ventum est; vincimur; duxit,** *The man was persuaded; it was done; they came; we are beaten; he took (his wife).*

USE OF VERBAL INFLEXIONS OF PERSON  
AND NUMBER

100. The finite verb contains both subject and predicate in itself, the personal inflexions expressing the subject, and the stem expressing the predicate.

Hence, whenever in English an unemphatic pronoun is sufficient to denote the subject without risk of mistake, the finite verb in Latin requires no addition for this purpose. This is so with the verb

1. In the first or second person.

Thus *curro, I run, currimus*, refer to the person or persons speaking; *curris, curritis, curre, currite*, to the person or persons spoken to.

But the pronouns may be added for the sake of emphasis or contrast.

*Quod ego fui ad Trasumennum, ad Cannas, id tu hodie es.* (Liv.) *What I was at Trasumennus (and) at Cannae, that you are to-day.*

*Negat cuncta Italia, negat senatus, negatis vos.* (Cic.) *All Italy denies (it), the Senate denies it, you deny it.*

2. In the third person, when it is the same as the subject of the last preceding verb of the same number and person, provided it is suited to the sense. (Very frequent.)

*Venit Verres in aedem Castōris; considerat templum; versat se; quaerit, quid agat.* (Cic.) *Verres comes into the temple of Castor; he examines the sanctuary; he turns about; he asks what he is to do.*

3. In certain verbs in the third person singular, where the fact of the action, state, or feeling is the prominent point and the doer is left indefinite. Such verbs are called IMPERSONALS, and may be classified as follows—

(a) The verbs *miseret*, *it pities*; *piget*, *it vexes*; *pudet*, *it shames*; *paenitet*, *it repents*; *taedet*, *it wearies*: e.g. *Ipsius facti pudet*. *Miseret me aliorum*.

(b) Intransitive verbs are sometimes so used, generally in the passive voice (see § 99).

*Dicto paretur. Cui parci potuit? Obedience is rendered to the bidding. To whom could mercy be shown?*

As the finite verb always contains its own subject in its personal inflexions, the separate word, usually called its subject, is, strictly speaking, in apposition to these inflexions for the purpose of closer definition.

101. When the subject is expressed by a separate word, the finite verb is in the same number and person as its subject.

*Te aerumnae premunt omnes, qui te florentem putas.* (Cic.) *All troubles press upon you who think yourself prosperous.*

Exceptions—

(a) If the subject be a substantive in the singular number, but denotes more than one person, the verb is sometimes in the plural.

*Diffugiunt alii ad naves; pars scandunt rursus equum.* (Verg.) *Some fly scattered to the ships; part climb again the horse.*

(b) The verb, if it follows a predicate, sometimes conforms to it in number. (This is rare, except where either substantive might be considered the subject.)

**Amantium irae amoris integratio est.** (Ter.) *Quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love.*

**Contentum rebus suis esse maximae sunt certissimaeque divitiae.** (Cic.) *To be satisfied with one's own possessions is the greatest and surest wealth.*

102. When the subject is composed of two or more substantives, denoting different persons or things, but regarded as in connexion with each other, the verb is put in the plural: in the first person plural, if the subject contain the first person; and in the second person plural, if the subject contain the second person and not the first.

**Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.** (Cic.)  
*If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

When two or more subjects require the same predicate, but are not represented as acting together, the predicate is usually expressed only once, and is put in the number and person required by the subject nearest to it in the sentence.

**Vir bonus et sapiens dici delector ego ac tu,** *I am delighted to be called a good and wise man, and so are you.*

## THE INDICATIVE MOOD AND TENSES

103. The Indicative Mood is the primary and ordinary form of the finite verb, and is therefore used wherever there is no special reason for employing the imperative or subjunctive. Not only facts but suppositions and commands can be put in the indicative mood, but only when the writer or speaker relies on the context, or evident sense, to guard against misapprehension, and does not care to mark the supposition or the command by the form of the expression.

The tenses of the Latin verb in the indicative mood may be divided either (i) according to the time to which they relate, or (ii) according to the completeness or incompleteness of the action spoken of.

104. i. *Time to which the tenses relate*

According to the time to which they relate, the tenses are either primary or secondary.

The *primary* tenses mark a state or action as going on, over, or still in the future at the time *at* which we are speaking, or at some time at which we assume that we are present and watching events.

The *secondary* tenses mark a state or action as going on, over, or still in the future at some other time *of* which we are speaking, and which we affirm (by the use of secondary tenses) to be past.

## ACTIVE VOICE

	PRIMARY.	SECONDARY.
Contemporary.	Present ; <b>dico</b> , <i>I am saying.</i>	Imperfect ; <b>dicebam</b> , <i>I was saying.</i>
Subsequent.	Future ; <b>dicam</b> , <i>I shall (you, he will) say.</i>	Aorist ; <b>dixi</b> , <i>I said</i> (i.e. after something had happened).
Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event.	Completed Future ; <b>dixero</b> , <i>I shall (you, he will) have said.</i>	
Antecedent.	Perfect ; <b>dixi</b> , <i>I have said.</i>	Pluperfect ; <b>dixeram</b> , <i>I had said.</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE

	PRIMARY.	SECONDARY.
Contemporary.	Pres. { <b>amor</b> , <i>I am being loved.</i>	Impf. { <b>amabar</b> , <i>I was being loved.</i>
Subsequent.	Fut. { <b>amabor</b> , <i>I shall (you, he will) be loved.</i>	Aor. { <b>amatus sum</b> , <i>I was loved.</i>
Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event.	Completed Future ; <b>amatus ero</b> (or <b>fuero</b> ), <i>I shall (you, he will) have been loved.</i>	
Antecedent.	Perf. { <b>amatus sum</b> , <i>I am (or have been) loved.</i>	Plup. { <b>amatus eram</b> (or <b>fueram</b> ), <i>I had been loved.</i>

105. ii. *Completeness or incompleteness of the action*

The present, future, and imperfect tenses express incomplete action (and hence are sometimes called respectively present imperfect, future imperfect, past imperfect).

*e.g. laedo, laedor, I am wounding, am being wounded; laedam, laedar, I shall wound, shall be wounded; laedebam, laedebam, I was wounding, was being wounded.*

The perfect, completed future, and pluperfect express completed action (and hence are sometimes called respectively present perfect, future perfect, past perfect).

*e.g. laesi, laesus sum, I have wounded, have been wounded; laesero, laesus ero, I shall have wounded, shall have been wounded; laeseram, laesus eram, I had wounded, had been wounded.*

The use of a tense of incomplete action rather than of complete action implies—

1. Continuance of an action contrasted with its conclusion.

*e.g. dico, I am speaking; dixi, I have done my speech.*

2. Continuance of an action contrasted with a single act.

*e.g. videbam, I was looking at; vidi, I caught sight of; poteram, I had it in my power; potui, I proved able.*

3. Purpose or attempt contrasted with actual performance.

*e.g. servabam, I tried to save; servavi, I actually saved; dabat, he offered; dedit, he gave.*

4. The action itself contrasted with the resulting condition.

*e.g. venio, I am on my way; veni, I am here; peribo, I shall die; periero, I shall be dead.*

106. The PRESENT tense expresses

1. An action at the time of speaking.

**Hic ego Servium exspecto.** (Cic.) *Here I am awaiting Servius.*

**Nunc, cum vos intueor, Romanos esse video.** (Liv.)  
*Now when I look on you, I see that there are Romans.*

2. An action in past time, but rhetorically assumed to be present. This is frequent in vivid narrations. (Historic present.)

**Archagātho negotium dedit, ut argentum ad mare deportaretur. Ascendit in oppidum Archagathus: jubet omnis proferre quod haberent. Metus erat summus.** (Cic.) *He gave A. the duty of seeing that the silver was brought down to the sea. A. goes up into the town. He orders all to bring out what they had. There was the greatest alarm.*

**Vix ea fatus eram: tremere omnia visa repente; summissi petimus terram et vox fertur ad auris.** (Verg.) *I had hardly spoken; everything seemed suddenly to be trembling; sinking down we drop to the ground, and a voice is borne to our ears.*

107. The FUTURE denotes an action taking place, or (in verbs signifying a state) a state existing, in future time.

Subordinate sentences, qualifying a principal future sentence (whether such future sentence is expressed in indicative or imperative, or subjunctive of command, etc.), and referring to the same time, have regularly and usually the future. (In English the present is generally found.)

**Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus.** (Cic.) *If we follow Nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*



## 108. The IMPERFECT tense expresses

1. A continuous action contemporaneous with past action or time referred to.

**Postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt. Tum Marius apud primos agebat, quod ibi Jugurtha cum plurimis erat,** *They attack the rear rank of the Romans. At the time Marius was busy in the front, because Jugurtha was there with most of his men.*

2. In letters it often denotes an action at the time of writing as being past when the correspondent receives the letter.

**Haec ego scribebam hora noctis nona. Milo campum jam tenebat: Marcellus candidatus ita stertebat, ut ego vicinus audirem,** *I am writing this at the ninth hour of the night. Milo is already in possession of the field; Marcellus a candidate is snoring so loud that I can hear him next door.*

3. Habitual or repeated action in past time.

**Dicebat melius quam scripsit Hortensius,** *Hortensius used to speak better than he has written.*

4. An action commenced, or attempted, or proposed in past time.

**Consistit utrumque agmen, et ad proelium sese expediebant.** (Liv.) *Each army takes up its position, and they begin to make ready for battle.*

109. The PERFECT tense expresses an action done in past time. As contrasted with the imperfect, it denotes a single act, not a continued state; a fact, not a description. As contrasted with the present, it denotes that the action is already completed.

1. AORIST or HISTORICAL PERFECT. An action which took place in past time, either singly or in succession to other actions. So usually in a continued narrative.

**Postremo Catilina in senatum vēnit. Tum M. Tullius consul orationem habuit quam postea scriptam edidit,** *Finally Catilina came into the Senate. Then Marcus Tullius the consul delivered a speech, which he afterwards wrote down and published.*

**Veni, vidi, vici,** *I came, I saw, I conquered.*

**L. Lucullus per multos annos Asiae provinciae praefuit,** *L. Lucullus governed the province of Asia for many years.*

2. **PERFECT or PRESENT PERFECT.** An action already completed before the present time, so that the result, rather than the action itself, is present to the mind.

**Membris utimur prius quam didicimus, cujus ea utilitatis causā habeamus,** *We use our limbs before we have learnt for the sake of what advantage we possess them.*

110. The **COMPLETED** future denotes an action in future time completed at some point in future time.

**Cum tu haec leges, ego illum fortasse convenero,** *When you read this, I shall perhaps have met him.*

**Eum cum videro, Arpinum pergā,** *When I have seen him, I will proceed to Arpinum.*

The **PLUPERFECT** denotes an action in past time, done before another past action.

**Prius omnia pati decrevit quam bellum sumere, quia temptatum antea secus cesserat.** (Sall.) *He resolved to endure everything rather than engage in war, because (when) attempted before it had turned out ill.*

**Hanno cum eis, qui postremi jam profligato proelio advenerant, vivus capitur.** (Liv.) *Hanno, with those who had come last, when the battle was already decided, is taken alive.*

*Future participle active with the verb sum*

111. In order to denote what a person purposes, or is destined to do in future time, especially if regarded from a point in the past or future, the future participle active is used with the different tenses of the verb **sum**: thus—

	PRIMARY.	SECONDARY.
Contemporary.	<b>dicturus sum</b> , <i>I am about to (or mean to or am to) say.</i>	<b>dicturus eram</b> , <i>I was at the time about to (or I meant to or was to) say.</i>
Subsequent.	<b>dicturus ero</b> , <i>I shall be about to say.</i>	<b>dicturus fui</b> , <i>I was (once) about to say.</i>
Antecedent.		<b>dicturus fueram</b> , <i>I had meant to say.</i>

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

112. The Imperative Mood is used to express a command or request.

The **PRESENT** is used of the present time, or without any implied reference to a defined future time.

The **FUTURE** is used with express reference to the time following, or to some particular case that may occur, and therefore is frequent in legal forms.

**Cura ut valeas.** **Cogite oves**, *pueri*, *Take care to keep well. Collect the sheep, my boys.*

**Cum haec confessus eris**, **negato tum sane**, **si voles**, **te pecuniam accepisse**, *When you have admitted this, then by all means deny, if you please, that you accepted money.*

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

113. The subjunctive mood is distinguished from the indicative by expressing an action or event as thought or supposed, rather than as done or narrated. This general distinction is modified in different kinds of sentences.

In simple or principal sentences the subjunctive is used to express

(A) A supposition, or

(C) A desire, as—

(A) *Velim, I should wish*; but *volo, I wish*.

*Videres, You would have seen*; *videbas, You saw*.

(C) *Vivas, May you live*; *vivis, You live*.

*Amemus patriam, Let us love our country*.

*Amamus patriam, We (do) love our country*.

114. In dependent or subordinate sentences the subjunctive is used chiefly after relatives (*qui, quae, quod*) and the following conjunctions (all of which are also frequently used with the indicative mood)—

*si, nisi* (B)

*ut, quin, dum* (D, E)

*cum* (F)

*quod* (G)

115. The usages of the subjunctive may be classed under eight heads, the first two of which may conveniently be taken together.

(A, B) *Conditional sentences*.—If the principal sentence has the subjunctive, the subordinate sentence containing the condition has the subjunctive also. The case is put as one not actual.

**Si jubeas, faciam**, *If you should command, I should do.*

**Si jusseris, faciam or fecerim**, *If you should have bidden, I should do or should have done.*

**Si juberis, facerem**, *If you should have been bidding, I should have been doing (or Were you bidding, I were doing).*

**Si jussisses, fecissem**, *If you had bidden, I should have done.*

Sometimes the conditional particle is not expressed—

**Roges me, dicam**, *Should you ask me, I should say.*

**Rogasses me, dicerem**, *Had you asked me, I should have been saying.*

*N.B.*—For distinction's sake we may call the subjunctive in the principal sentence a **HYPOTHETICAL** subjunctive; that in the subordinate sentence a **CONDITIONAL** subjunctive.

116. The hypothetical subjunctive (A) is often used without the condition being expressed, as—

**Velim, videres** (as above).

**Quis dicat?** *Who would say?*

**Illius impulsu moenia mota forent**, *By a blow from him (i.e. if he had struck them) walls would have been stirred.*

So also the conditional clause (B) is sometimes found with **si**, but without any principal clause expressed.

**O si ille adesset**, *O if he had been present! (How different would things have been if).*

Frequently in sentences of comparison with **ut**, **si**, **quasi**, **tamquam**, etc.

**Scipio privatus, ut si consul esset, haec jussit**, *Scipio, a private man, as if he had been consul, gave these orders (i.e. as he would have done if, etc.)*

**Quasi hoc mihi difficile sit!** *As if this would be difficult to me (i.e. You speak as you would speak if, etc.)*

117. (C) *Optative and jussive sentences.*—Wish, command, or duty are often expressed by the subjunctive—

**Valeant cives mei, sint beati,** *May my fellow-citizens fare well, happy may they be.*

Often with **utinam**, as—

**Utinam populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet** (Caligula), *O that the Roman people had but one neck!*

**Quid faciat?** *What must he do?*

In prohibitions addressed to individuals the perfect (not the present) second person is used, as—

**Ne transieris Iberum, ne quid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis,** *Cross not the Ebro, have nothing to do with the men of Saguntum.*

118. Frequently this subjunctive of command is in apparent dependence on another verb of willing or bidding, as—

**Nolo me videat senex,** *I do not want the old man to see me.*  
**Cave putes hoc ita esse,** *Beware of thinking this to be so.*  
**Nuntiavit patribus urbem munirent,** *He took the message to the Fathers that they were to fortify the city.*

119. (D) *Final sentences.*—A purpose is often expressed by the subjunctive after **ut**, **ne**, **quin**, **dum** and the relative **qui** (**quae**, **quod**)—

**Mitto legatum qui dicat,** *I send an ambassador who is to say.*

**Mitto eum ut dicat,** *I send him that he may say, or send him to say.*

**Esse oportet ut vivas, non vivere ut edas,** *You should eat to live, not live to eat.*

**Scribebat Aelius orationes quas alii dicerent,** *Aelius used to write speeches for others to deliver.*

A special use occurs after verbs of *fearing*. The English use a negative, where the Latins do not, and *vice versa*, as—

**Timeo ut dicas**, *I fear that you will not say it.*

**Timeo ne dicas**, *I fear your saying it, or lest you should say it.*

**O puer, ut sis vitalis metuo**, *Boy, I fear you will not be long-lived (lit. how you are to be long-lived).*

**Timeo ne non impetrem**, *I fear lest I should not get it.*

**120. (E)** *Consecutive* sentences express actions which mark or naturally follow.

This use is most common with relatives or with *ut*.

When a negative is required, *ut non*, not *ne*, is used.

**Sunt qui putent**, *There are people who think (such as to think).*

**Saepe fit ut ei qui debent non respondeant ad tempus**, *It often happens (in such a way) that debtors do not answer the claims punctually.*

Sometimes in concessions and indignant questions—

**Ut erraverim, legentes non decepi**, *Suppose I have erred, I have not deceived readers.*

**Quamquam quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut unquam te corrigas?** *And yet what am I saying? (Can it be) that anything should break you? that you should ever correct yourself?*

**121. (F)** Sentences expressing the *attendant circumstances* chiefly with relative *qui* and *cum*, in ordinary historical narration. The English translation often requires a participle or the adverb *since* or *although*.

**Peccavi qui a te discesserim**, *I sinned in leaving you (since I left you).*

**Zenonem, cum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter**, *Being at Athens, I attended Zeno's lectures frequently.*

**Epaminondas cum vicisset Lacedaemonios, quae-sivit salvusne esset clipeus, *E. having conquered the Lacedaemonians asked if his shield was safe.***

**Pylades cum sis, dices te esse Orestem? *Being Pylades (seeing that you are Pylades), will you say that you are Orestes?***

122. (G) The subjunctive is often used of *reported reasons* or *definitions* and *reported* (or *indirect*) *questions*—

**Laudat Africanum, quod fuerit abstinens, *He praises Africanus for being abstinent.*** (The being abstinent is the reason given by him for praising Africanus.)

**Magna proponit iis qui regem occiderint praemia, *He offers great rewards to any who should have slain the king.*** (*qui regem occiderint* is a definition included in the proclamation.)

**Ubi nunc sim nescio, *I know not where I am now.*** (**Ubi nunc sum? nescio, *Where am I now? I know not.***)

**Rogitant me ut valeam, quid agam, *They keep asking me how I am in health, what I am doing.***

123. (H) The subjunctive is often used in sentences dependent on another subjunctive, or on an infinitive, to show that the action is not spoken of as a fact in itself, but only as part of a thought.

Thus, a direct sentence has the indicative—

**Romulus ut natus est exponitur, *Romulus is exposed as soon as he is born.***

But in a reported sentence—

**Romulum ut natus sit exponi dicunt, *They say Romulus is exposed as soon as he is born.***

**Si Romulus ut natus sit exponatur ferant di opem, *If Romulus should be exposed as soon as he is born, the gods would bring help.***



## CONTRASTED USES OF THE INDICATIVE

**124.** The indicative mood in conditional sentences assumes a fact, without making any implication as to its truth (cp. § 115).

**Si venēno te tollere volui, cur te iratum feci?** *If I wished to take you off by poison, why did I make you angry?*

**Si deus es, tribuere mortalibus beneficia debes,** *If (as you say) you are a god, you ought to confer benefits on men.*

**125.** The indicative is used after a relative to express a fact or a definition without any signification either of purpose (cp. § 119).

**Misi quendam qui dixit,** *I sent a certain man, who said.*

**Scribebat Aelius orationes quas alii dicebant,** *Aelius used to write speeches, which others delivered.*

Or of quality (cp. § 120).

**Sunt multi qui eripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur,** *There are many who (as a fact) take from some men with the purpose of giving it to others.*

**Quem multi timent, necesse est multos timeat,** *A man whom many fear, must needs fear many.*

**126.** **Dum** is used with the indicative for *while*, *so long as*, *until*, when no purpose is implied (cp. § 119).

**Hoc feci dum licuit,** *I did this as long as I was allowed.*

**Dum veniunt amici, solus inambulavit,** *While his friends were arriving he walked up and down alone.*

**Mihi curae erit dum sciero quid egeris,** *It will be an anxiety to me until I have learnt what you have done.*

127. The indicative is used with **cum** to denote the *time* at which anything happened, without implying any sort of connexion (cp. § 121).

**Cum Placentiam consul venit, jam abierat Hannibal,**  
*At the time when the consul reached Placentia, Hannibal had already gone away.*

**Hannibal subibat muros cum repente erumpunt Romani,** *H. was coming up to the walls, when the Romans suddenly sally out.*

Sometimes **cum** with the indicative means *whenever*.

**Cum ad villam veni hoc me delectat,** *Whenever I have come to my country home, this delights me.*

128. The indicative is used with **quod, quia, quoniam, quando**, to express a reason which the speaker gives as his own (cp. § 122).

**Iratus es quod eum defendo quem tu accusas,** *You are angry because I am defending the man whom you are prosecuting.*

**Quando te in jure conspicio hoc dicam,** *Since I see you in court, I will say this.*

129. Relative clauses, which contain definitions of the object of a verb, must be carefully distinguished from dependent questions which are themselves the object of a verb.

**Scio quod quaeris,** *I know (the thing) which you are asking, i.e. the answer to your question.*

**Scio quid quaeras,** *I know what you are asking, i.e. what your question is.*

## OF REPORTED SPEECH

130. When a statement is directly made, a question directly put, or a supposition directly expressed, the *language* is said to be *direct* (**oratio recta**). So also in a report which preserves the independent form in which the speech, etc., was delivered ; as 'Caesar said : I am about to march,' etc.

When a statement, question, or supposition is reported in a form which makes it dependent in construction on some such word as *said*, the language is said to be oblique or indirect (**oratio obliqua**) ; thus, 'Caesar said that he was about to march.'

131. (A) The MOODS used in the **oratio obliqua** are the infinitive and subjunctive, never (unless by an irregularity) the indicative.

1. All statements in principal sentences in the indicative mood in the **oratio recta** become infinitives in the **oratio obliqua**. Those relative sentences in which **qui** = **et is** or **nam is**, **cum** = **et tum**, etc. (being not really subordinate sentences), are properly and usually put in the infinitive.

2. Questions in the indicative mood in **oratio recta** are, if closely dependent on a verb of asking, put in the subjunctive, being in fact ordinary indirect questions ; but, if they are part of the continuous report of a speech, they are put in the infinitive if of the first or third person ; in the subjunctive if of the second person.

*e.g.* **Quid facio ?** becomes **quid (se) facere ?**

**Quid facis ?** becomes **quid (ille) faceret ?**

**Quid facit ?** becomes **quid (illum) facere ?**

(But **rogavit, quid (ipse, ille, etc.) faceret** for all alike.)

3. All subordinate sentences, as also all sentences in the subjunctive and imperative moods in *oratio recta*, are put in the subjunctive.

**Darius, qui rex Persarum est, advēnit,** *Darius, who is the king of the Persians, is approaching,*

becomes in a reported sentence :

**Darium, qui rex Persarum esset, advenire dixerunt,**  
*They said that Darius, who was the king of the Persians, was approaching.*

But in the apodosis to a conditional sentence the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are (in *oratio obliqua*) expressed in the active voice by the future participle with *fuisse*: in the passive, by using the periphrasis *futurum fuisse ut*. The future participle with *esse* is used also for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) subjunctive active; and *fore* or *futurum esse ut* for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) subjunctive passive.

*e.g.* **Si habeam, dem** becomes **dixit se daturum esse si haberet**

**Si haberem, darem** becomes **dixit se daturum fuisse si haberet or habuisset**

**Si mansissem, interfectus essem,** becomes **dixit futurum fuisse ut interficeretur, si mansisset.**

132. (B) 1. The *tenses* of the *infinitive* are present, or perfect, or future according as the time would have been present, past, or future in the *oratio recta*.

2. The *tenses* of the *subjunctive* are usually secondary, viz. imperfect and pluperfect, especially in commands or questions; but the present and perfect are sometimes used, especially if the verb on which the whole *oratio obliqua* depends be in the present.

133. (C) In ordinary historical accounts no other *person* than the third can in general be used. Thus—

1. Instead of pronouns of the first person, the pronouns *se*, *suus*, *ipse*, and instead of pronouns of the second person, *is*, *ille*, are used in the requisite cases.,

The pronouns *hic*, *this near me*, and *iste*, *that near you*, are rarely found in *oratio obliqua*.

(*Nos* and *noster* are sometimes used by Caesar of the Roman people or Roman army generally.)

2. All finite verbs are put in the third person.

134. The following tabular statement of the above may be useful—

(A) MOOD : PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

	<i>Oratio Recta.</i>	<i>Oratio Obliqua.</i>
	Indicative	Infinitive.
<i>Statements</i>	{ Subjunctive (hypothesis)	{ In active, future part. with <i>fuisse</i> , or some- times (for present or imperfect) <i>esse</i> . In passive <i>futurum</i> <i>fuisse ut</i> , etc., or sometimes (for present or imperfect) <i>fore</i> or <i>futurum esse ut</i> , etc.
<i>Questions</i>	{ Indicative { 1st & 3rd pers.	Infinitive
	{ Subjunctive { 2nd pers.	Subjunctive
<i>Commands or Prohibitions</i>	{ Imperative Subjunctive }	Subjunctive

SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Indicative	{	Subjunctive
Subjunctive		

## (B) TENSE.

		<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
Present	}	Imperfect,	sometimes
Future		Present	
Completed Future	}	Pluperfect,	sometimes
Perfect		Perfect	
Imperfect		Imperfect	
Pluperfect	{ ordinary	Pluperfect	
		hypothetical Future participle with	
		<b>fu<del>erim</del></b>	
		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
Present		Present	
Future	}	Fut. part. with <b>esse</b>	
Completed Future			
Perfect	}	Perfect	
Imperfect			
Pluperfect			

## (C) PERSON.

ego, meus, nos, nos- ter, tu, tuus, vos, vester, iste, is, ille.	{ se, suus, ipse (usually), of the subject of the sentence: is, ille, of what is not the sub- ject.
hic, nunc, often by	
	ille, tum, tunc

135. The above rules will be best illustrated by the following extracts—

## ORATIO RECTA.

Si pa-  
cem populus Romanus  
cum Helvetiis faciet, in  
eam partem ibunt atque ibi  
erunt Helvetii, ubi tu eos  
constitueris atque esse  
volueris; sin bello persequi

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Is ita cum Caesare  
egit): Si pacem populus  
Romanus cum Helvetiis  
faceret, in eam partem  
ituros atque ibi futuros Hel-  
vetios, ubi eos Caesar con-  
stituisset atque esse volu-  
isset; sin bello persequi

## ORATIO RECTA.

*perseverabis, reminiscitor et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus es, cum ille qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non poterant, ne ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribueris aut nos despexeris. Nos ita a patribus majoribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute, quam dolo contendamus aut insidiis nitamur. Quare ne commiseris ut hic locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodatur (Caes.)*

*Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res quas vos (legati Helvetii) commemoravistis memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero quo minus merito populi Rom. acciderunt; qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere: sed eo deceptus est, quod neque commissum a se intellegebat quare timeret, neque sine causa*

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

*perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, cum ille qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam prodaret.*

(His Caesar ita respondit): *Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre quo minus merito populi Rom. accidissent: qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisset difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret quare timeret, neque sine causa*

## ORATIO RECTA.

timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *me* invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis, memoriam deponere possum? Quod *vestra* victoria tam insolenter gloriamini, quodque tam diu *vos* impune injurias tulisse<sup>2</sup> admiramini, eodem pertinet. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen si obsides a *vobis* mihi dabuntur, uti ea quae pollicemini facturos intellegam, et si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciatis, vobiscum pacem faciam.

Quid est levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci *vellet*, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *eo*<sup>1</sup> invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod *sua* victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu *se* impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Cum *ea* ita sint, tamen si obsides ab *eis* sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, *sese* cum *iis* pacem esse facturum. (Caes.)

(Tribuni militum nihil temere agendum existimabant): Quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium? (Caes.)

<sup>1</sup> *eo* is used for *se* because it does not refer to the subject of the clause in which it occurs.

<sup>2</sup> 'Have carried off scot-free,' i.e. 'have not been punished for.'



## ORATIO RECTA.

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

<p>Deorum immortalium benignitate, <i>meis</i> consiliis, patientia militum, Vei jam <i>erunt</i> in potestate populi Romani: quid de praeda faciendum <i>censetis</i>?</p>	<p>(Litteras ad senatum misit,) deum immortalium benignitate, <i>suis</i> consiliis, patientia militum, Vei jam <i>fore</i> in potestate populi Romani: quid de praeda faciendum <i>censerent</i>? (Liv.)</p>
---	---

136. When an indicative mood is found in the midst of *oratio obliqua*, it expresses an assertion of the narrator, not of the person whose speech is being reported, as—

Caesar per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse. (Caes.)

(The clause *quam Gallis concesserat* is Caesar's explanation for the benefit of his readers: the scouts would describe it to him otherwise.)

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF SENTENCES

137. A *simple* sentence contains only one assertion. A *compound* sentence contains two or more assertions, one by the side of the other (*co-ordinate*), usually connected by a conjunction, or a relative, as—

*Rem cognoscit et sententiam dicit*, *He hears the case and gives his opinion.*

A *complex* sentence contains two or more sentences, of which one is *principal*, and the others *subordinate* to it. *Subordinate* sentences are *substantival*, *adjectival*, or *adverbial*, according as they take the place of a substantive, an adjective, or an adverb.

138. *Substantival* sentences may represent a substantive in the nominative or the accusative case, as—

- (a) **Gratum est quod venisti**, *Your arrival is welcome, literally that you have come is welcome.*  
 (b) **Scio eum venisse**, *I know of his arrival, literally I know him to have come.*  
 (c) **Scio cur venerit**, *I know the purpose of his coming, literally I know why he came ; a dependent question.*  
 (d) **Peto ut omnes poenas dent**, *I ask for the punishment of all, literally I ask that all may pay penalties.*

Such sentences as the last are properly sentences of purpose or result.

139. Adjectival sentences are always introduced by a relative adjective or adverb.

**Hic est quem quaerimus**, *This is the man we are seeking.*

Adverbial sentences qualify verbs or adjectives, and are introduced by a conjunction or a relative adverb. The following are the chief ideas denoted by such sentences :—

1. *Place*, where, whence, whither. (*Local*) with **ubi, unde, quo**, etc.

2. *Time*, when, during which, until, after, before, as often as. (*Temporal*) with **cum, ut, dum, postquam**, etc.

3. *Manner*, as, as though. (*Comparative*) with **ut, quasi, velut**.

4. *Purpose*, in order that, lest. (*Final*) with **ut, ne, ut ne**.

5. *Result*, so that. (*Consecutive*) with **ut, ut non**.

6. *Condition*, if, provided that, if only. (*Conditional*) with **si, dum, dum modo**.

7. *Cause*, because, since. (*Causal*) with **quod, cum, quia**, etc.

8. *Concession*, although. (*Concessive*) with **etsi, quamquam, ut**, etc.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES

140. In subordinate sentences the time is determined by the time of the principal sentence. Hence the present and perfect subjunctive are used in sentences dependent on primary tenses, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in sentences dependent on secondary tenses. (The historical present, § 106, 2, is treated sometimes as primary, sometimes as secondary.)

1. In dependent interrogative sentences we have—

(a)	Vidi (perf.)	} quid facias	<i>I have seen</i>	} what you are doing
	Video		<i>I see</i>	
	Videbo		<i>I shall see</i>	
(b)		quid feceris		<i>what you have done</i>
(c)		quid facturus sis		<i>what you will do</i>
(d)	Videram	} quid faceres	<i>I had seen</i>	} what you were doing
	Videbam		<i>I was seeing</i>	
	Vidi (aor.)		<i>I saw</i>	
(e)		quid fecisses		<i>what you had done</i>
(f)		quid facturus esses		<i>what you were going to do</i>

2. In consecutive sentences the sequence is the same, except that sometimes the perfect subjunctive is used after a secondary tense to denote a distinct historical fact, as—

**Inde factum est ut Galli urbem ceperint** (not *capere*—*ent*), *Hence it happened that the Gauls took the town.*

3. In final and jussive sentences the present is used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary tenses.

**Occlusit portas ut hostes excludat**, *He has shut the gates to keep out the enemy.*

**Occlusit portas ut hostes excluderet**, *He shut the gates to keep out the enemy.*

## NOTES ON SOME USES OF THE CASES

141. Some transitive verbs take two accusatives, one marking the person, the other the thing affected: these are: *dóceo*, *teach*; *célo*, *hide*; *posco*, *flagito*, *demand*; *rôgo*, *ask*; *ôro*, *pray*, as—

*Pacem te omnes oramus*, *We all pray you for peace.*

The latter accusative is retained even after a passive verb, as—

*Rogatus est sententiam*, *He was asked his opinion.*

142. An accusative is used by the poets after a passive verb to denote (a) a part of the body, (b) a thing worn, as—

*Tunicâ inducitur artus*, *His limbs are clothed with a tunic.*  
*Vestes indûta recinctas*, *Clad in high-girt robes.*

143. (a) The dative is very common after verbs compounded with a preposition, as—

*Imponimus onera jumentis*, *We place burdens on beasts.*

But in prose the preposition is often repeated with its proper case.

(b) The following verbs may be translated by a transitive verb in English, but in Latin they denote a *state*, rather than a direct action, and are therefore followed by the dative—

*adversor*, *am opposed.*

*aemûlor*, *am rival.*

*blandior*, *am coaxing.*

*diffido*, *am distrustful.*

*displiceo*, *am displeasing.*

*făveo*, *am favourable.*

*fido*, *am trustful (so confido).*

*irascor*, *am growing angry.*

*mēdeor, am healing.*  
*nōceo, am hurtful.*  
*nūbo, take the veil, i.e. marry (of a woman).*  
*parco, am sparing.*  
*pāreo, am obedient.*  
*plāceo, am pleasing.*  
*praesto, am superior.*  
*satisfacio, do enough for.*  
*servio, am a slave to.*  
*stūdeo, am zealous.*  
*supplico, am suppliant to.*  
*tempĕro, am sparing.*

And compounds of **sum**: such as, **adsum**, *am beside*; **obsum**, *am in the way of*; **praesum**, *am over*; **prosum**, *am on behalf of, i.e. of use to*.

(c) Other verbs take a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing, which latter is often omitted, or replaced by a substantival clause, as—

*crēdo, trust.*  
*ignosco, overlook, pardon.*  
*impĕro, order.*  
*invideo, grudge.*  
*mīnor, threaten.*  
*persuadeo, persuade.*  
*suadeo, advise.*

As **hoc tibi credo**, *I entrust this to you*; **tibi credo**, *I believe you*; **Crasso invideo divitias**, *I grudge C. his wealth*; **Crasso invideo**, *I envy Crassus*; **imperat Gallis frumentum**, *he orders corn of the Gauls*; **imperat servo ut redeat**, *he orders the slave to return*.

The dative of the agent is used in prose only with gerundive, and sometimes passive participles, and adjectives in **-bilis**.

## 144. Prepositions are required with the ablative

1. To denote an agent rather than an instrument, as—

**A Caesare gladio occisus est,** *He was slain by Caesar with a sword.*

2. When
- with*
- means
- in company with*
- , not
- by means of*
- , as—

**Venit cum duobus servis,** *He came with two slaves.*

3. To express
- manner*
- , when no epithet is employed, (except in a few adverbial expressions), as—

**Dixit cum prudentia,** *He spoke with foresight.*

4. To denote
- place where*
- , with a common noun, or the interior or neighbourhood of a town or country, as—

**In castris,** *in the camp*; **ad Romam,** *near Rome*; **in Hispania,** *in Spain.*

But with *medius* and *totus* *in* is usually omitted.

5. Usually to denote
- place whence*
- , under the same conditions, as—

**Ex Italia pulsus est,** *He was banished from Italy.*

**De saxo dejectus est,** *He was thrown down from the rock.*

145. The following verbs are followed by an ablative, which originally denoted the instrument: **utor**, *use* (lit. employ myself); **vescor**, *feed on* (lit. feed myself); **fungor**, *discharge* (lit. busy myself); **fruor**, *enjoy* (lit. enjoy myself); **nitor**, *lean on* (lit. support myself); **potior**, *master* (lit. make myself powerful). So also **opus est**, *there is work to be done with*, i.e. I need; **usus est**, *there is employment*, i.e. I want.

**Oculi suo munere funguntur,** *The eyes discharge their function.*

**Luce fruimur,** *We enjoy the light.*

**Opus est nobis animis,** *We require courage.*

146. (a) The genitive case is not used, as often in English, where a part of a thing, not really divided, is denoted by an adjective, as—

**Summus mons**, *The top of the mountain.*

**Tota urbs**, *The whole of the city.*

**Aversa charta**, *The back of the paper.*

(b) The following impersonal verbs denoting mental emotion are followed by an accusative of the person and a genitive of the object or source of the emotion: (**me**) **miseret**, (*I*) *feel pity*; **pudet**, *feel shame*; **paenitet**, *feel discontent*; **piget**, *feel annoyance*; **taedet**, *feel weariness*; so also **misereror**, *I feel pity*; but not **miseror**, *I commiserate*, which takes an accusative: as—

**Paenitet te fortunae**, *You are discontented with your lot.*

## USE OF PRONOUNS

147. **Hic** is the demonstrative pronoun of the first person, **iste** of the second, **ille** of the third. Hence **hic** is used of the nearer, sometimes “the latter”; **ille** of the more remote, sometimes “the former”; (**ille** is also used of a well-known person or thing:) **iste** of something despised or disliked.

**Is** denotes some person or thing named in the context, where mere reference without emphasis is required.

148. **Se**, **suus** are used with reference to the subject of the sentence; sometimes we should use *himself*, *themselves*, *his own*, *their own*, in English, but by no means always. Thus **Caesar Catōni dixit verba ejus sibi displicēre**, *Caesar told Cato that his (Cato's) words displeased him (Caesar)*. **Ipse** is an adjective of emphasis: if a pronoun of the first or second person is not expressed, it is understood to refer to the third person.

**Neque sane, quid ipse sentiret, ostendit**, *Nor indeed did he show what he thought himself.*

149. The indefinite pronouns **quis**, **quispiam**, **aliquis**, **quidam** are used in affirmative sentences to denote "some one"; **quis** is used thus only in relative sentences, and after **cum**, **si**, **nisi**, **ne**, **num**. Sometimes, if the sense requires it, they can be used in negative sentences also, but this is rarely the case except with **quis**.

**Si quis aliquando quidpiam dixerit**, *If some one has at some time or other said something.*

The pronouns **quisquam** (subst.) and **ullus** (adj.), *any*, are used only in negative sentences and such as imply a negative: **quivis** and **quilibet**, *any you please*, may be used in affirmative or, if the sense requires it, in negative sentences. Compare—

**Non puto quemquam hoc facere posse**, *I do not think that any one at all can do this*, with

**Non puto quemvis hoc facere posse**, *I do not think that any one you please (i.e. every one) can do this.*

150. **Uterque**, *each*, is used of two only, **quisque**, *each*, of more than two. In the plural **uterque** and **quisque** are used of two sets or groups, and of more than two sets or groups respectively. **Quisque** is often used with **se** or **suus**, or with a superlative or an ordinal: as **pro se quisque dixit**, *each spoke for himself*; **optimus quisque**, *all the best people*; **decimus quisque occisus est**, *every tenth man was killed*. **Quisquis**, **quicunque**, *whoever*, are properly used as indefinite relatives: as **quicunque hoc dicit**, *error*, *whoever says this, is mistaken*. But they are sometimes used when **quivis**, etc., would be more exact. **Alius** is *other* generally; **alter**, *the other* of two, or *the second*; **ceteri**, *the rest*. **Alius** — **alius** is *one — another*; **alter** — **alter**, *the one — the other*; **unus et alter** is *one or two*. If **alius** is repeated in the same clause it is translated *different*: **alius aliud videt**, *different men see different things*.



151. The first person plural is often used for the singular—

**Excurremus legati ad Pisonem**, *I shall go off as a commissioner to Piso.*

The second person plural is never used for the singular. For the indefinite “one” we find such expressions as—

(1) The second person singular subjunctive : **dicas**, *one would say.*

(2) **quis** or **aliquis** : **si quis dicat**, *if one should say.*

(3) an impersonal : **non licet ire**, *one may not go.*

(4) a relative with **is** : **is qui dicit**, *one who says.*

## USE OF CONJUNCTIONS

152. **Et** simply connects words and sentences ; **atque** adds something on which more stress is laid ; **-que** generally adds something of less importance to complete the idea.

As a rule, if there are three co-ordinate words a conjunction is used twice, or else not at all—

**Summa fide, constantia, justitia**, or

**Summa fide et constantia et justitia.**

Not as in English.

153. **Sed**, **verum**, **ceterum**, **autem**, **vero**, **at**, and sometimes **quod**, are used as adversative conjunctions, to contrast the meaning while connecting sentences ; **autem** and **vero** are never placed first in a clause.

154. **Aut**, *or*, is used where the difference is important, **vel**, *or*, where it is slight : hence **aut** — **aut**, *either* — *or*, suggest that two statements are mutually exclusive, **vel** — **vel**, *either* — *or* (*if you please*), that both may be true, or that the choice is unimportant. **Sive** (**seu**) — **sive** (**seu**), *whether* — *or*, are used when it is uncertain or indifferent which alternative should be taken.

## INTERROGATIONS

155. In simple questions **-ne** suggests nothing as to the answer; **videsne**? *do you see?* **nonne** suggests an affirmative answer: **nonne vides**? *do you not see?* **num** suggests a negative answer: **num vides**? *you do not see, do you?*

In alternative questions **utrum**? *whether?* is often prefixed to the first member, but sometimes **-ne** is used and sometimes no particle is employed; the second is introduced by **an**.

**Utrum hoc nescis an parvi facis**? *Do you not know this, or do you care little for it?* (Or **nescisne an . . .**?)

Sometimes **an** introduces a simple question, when it is asked in consequence of something previously said.

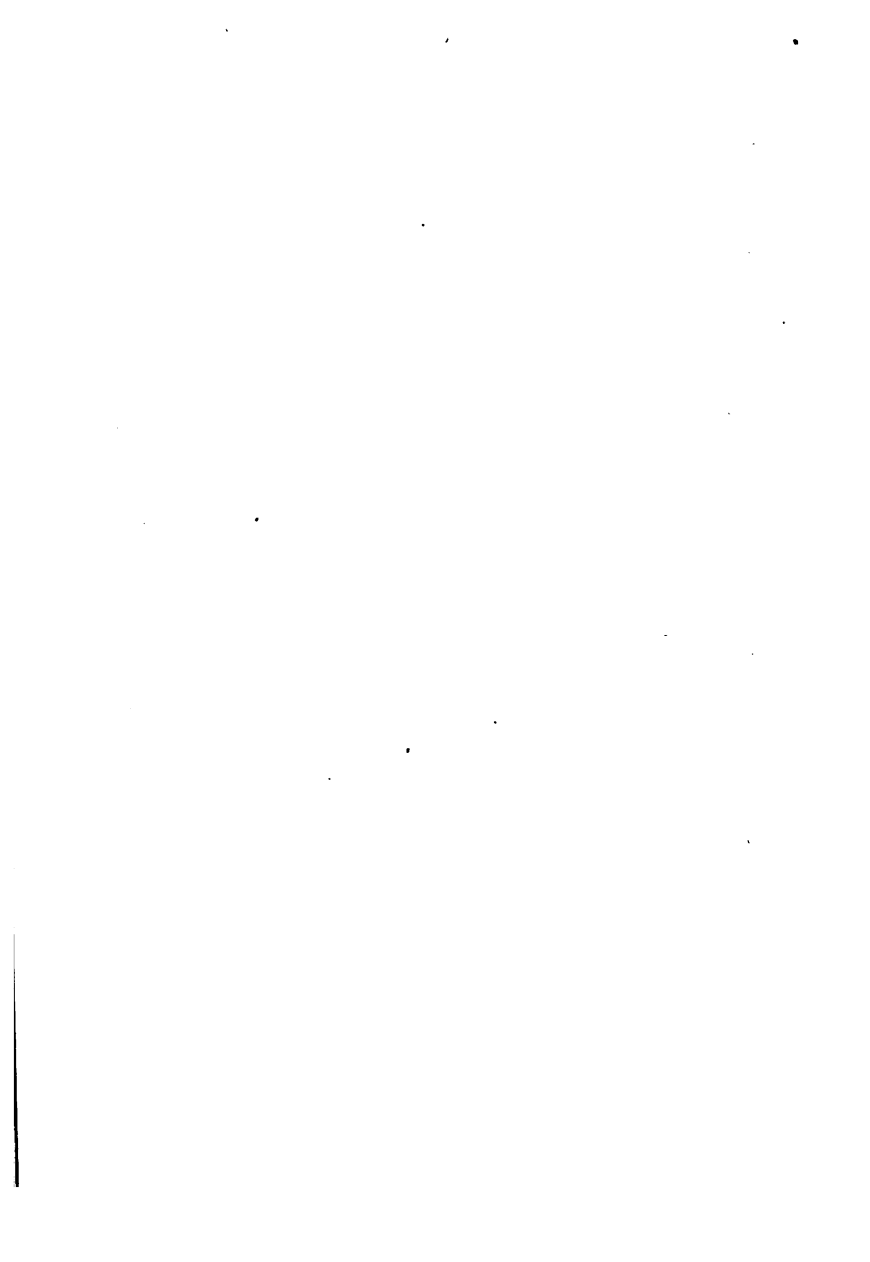
**An putas me hoc dixisse**? *Do you think, then, that I said this?*

In dependent simple questions **num** loses its special force, and is only introductory; **an** is similarly used, but less commonly.

**Rogavit num puer abiisset**, *He asked whether the boy had gone away.*

**Nescio an adsit**, *I do not know whether he is here.*

In dependent alternative questions **necne** is more common than **annon** for "or not."



## APPENDIX

### A.—ROMAN MONEY

THE earliest coinage at Rome was of copper (*aes*), alloyed with tin and lead. The chief coin was the *as*, which was supposed to weigh a pound, though no extant pieces quite reach this weight. It was divided into 12 *unciae*; and coins were struck for the half-pound (*semis*), four ounces (*triens*), three ounces (*quadrans*), two ounces (*sextans*), and ounce (*uncia*). } ?  
By degrees the *as* was reduced in weight, until in B.C. 217 it weighed only one *uncia*, and afterwards only half an *uncia*. In B.C. 269 silver coins were first struck, the *denarius* = 10 *asses*, the *quinarius* = 5 *asses*, and the *sestertius* =  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*. (*Sestertius* = *semis tertius*, a half-as the third, i.e.  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*.) After B.C. 217 16 *asses* went to the *denarius*, and therefore four to the *sestertius*; and the value of the *denarius* was reduced to that of  $\frac{1}{84}$  of a pound of silver. For the time of the Republic the value of the *sestertius* was nearly 2d., that of the *denarius* about  $8\frac{1}{4}$ d. Julius Caesar struck a gold coin called *aureus*, equal to 25 *denarii*.

In reckoning money the *sestertius* was commonly used. Up to 2000 cardinal numbers are prefixed, e.g. *ducentos sestertios accepit*, he received 200 *sesterces*. But when *milia* would have been used, instead of *milia sestertium*, it was usual to say *sestertia*, the genitive plural being taken as a neuter singular and declined: e.g. *septem sestertia misit*, he sent 7000 *sesterces*. Forms like *sestertium sexagena milia*, 60,000 *sesterces*, are, however, also found. In the case of

amounts requiring the use of **centum milia**, numeral adverbs were prefixed; and as the use of these always implied **centum milia**, these words were usually omitted: thus **vicies sestertium** = **vicies centum milia sestertium**, 2,000,000 *sesterces*. With such numbers **sestertium** was again declined, but only in the singular: *e.g.* **sestertio decies fundum emi**, *I bought the estate for a million (sesterces)*. **Mille sestertium** = £8 10s. nearly; **decies sestertium** = £8500 nearly. (Translate **Accepi vicies ducenta triginta quinque milia quadringentos decem et septem nummos**.—Cic.)

Interest was in early times at the rate of  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the capital for a year or ten months (equal to 10 per cent for twelve months), or **fenus unciarium**. Afterwards interest was calculated, as in Greece, by the month, and the legal rate was  $\frac{1}{100}$  of the capital (**sors**) each month, *i.e.* 12 per cent. This was called **centesima**. Lower rates were denoted by names derived from the fractions of the **as**, *e.g.* **usuræ quadrantes** = 3 per cent: higher rates by distributive numerals, *e.g.* **quinae centesimæ** = 60 per cent.

---

The most common measures were—

Weight: **libra** =  $\frac{7}{8}$  of a pound Troy.

Length: **pes** = 11·6 English inches; **passus** = 5 **pedes**.

Surface: **jugerum** = about  $\frac{5}{8}$  of an English acre.

Capacity: **sextarius** = nearly a pint; **modius** = nearly a peck.

#### B.—ROMAN RECKONING OF TIME

The year was generally described by the names of the two consuls who held office during it. It was commonly dated by the number of years that had elapsed since the foundation of the city, attributed to B.C. 753. Thus “in B.C. 63” would be expressed **anno urbis conditæ sexcentesimo nonagesimo primo M. Tullio Cicerone et C. Antonio consulibus**.

The year was originally divided into ten months, beginning with March: the names were **mensis Martius** (*the month of Mars*), **Aprilis** (*of opening*), **Maius** (*of growth*), **Junius** (*of thriving*), **Quintilis**, **Sextilis**, **September**, **October**, **Novem-**

**ber, December** (*the fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth months*). To these were afterwards added **Jānuārius** (*the month of beginning farm work*), and **Februārius** (*of cleansing*). After B.C. 153 the year was held to begin with January 1st. In B.C. 44, after the murder of Julius Caesar, the month **Quintilis** was called **Julius** in his honour, and in B.C. 8 the month **Sextilis** received the name **Augustus** in honour of the Emperor Augustus.

The days of the month were computed from three days in each, called respectively **Kalendae**, **Nōnae**, and **Idus**. The name of the month was added to these as an adjective in agreement. The Kalends were the first days of each month, on which it was the custom to proclaim (**calare**) to the people the name and divisions of the month. The Ides were probably the days of the shining (root **id**) of the full moon. The Nones were nine days (according to the inclusive reckoning of the Romans) before the Ides.

Up to the time of the reform of the Calendar by Julius Caesar in B.C. 45, *four* months—March, May, July, and October—had 31 days, *seven* had 29, and *one*, February, had 28. Every other year an intercalated month of 22 or 23 days was inserted after February 23rd. After the reform the months were made of the same length as at present, *i.e.* two days were added to January, August, and December, and February 24th (*the sixth* day before March 1st) was reckoned twice over in every fourth year, hence called **annus bissextilis**.

In the four months originally long the Ides fell on the 15th, and the Nones consequently on the 7th; in all the others the Ides fell on the 13th and the Nones on the 5th.

The days of each month were counted backwards from the next chief day, the days between the Kalends and the Nones from the Nones, those between the Nones and the Ides from the Ides, and those between the Ides and the Kalends of the next month from the Kalends. The day before was denoted by **pridie**, followed by an accusative. In all other cases the reckoning was inclusive: thus January 13th was "the third day before the Ides," March 25th "the eighth day before the Kalends of April." There were two ways of expressing the

// 5a

LIBRARY  
MUSEUM  
OF THE  
BRITISH MUSEUM

date in Latin: either the preposition **ante** was omitted altogether, although the case remained the accusative, as if it were present: *e.g.* **tertio** (*die ante*) **Idus Januarias**, or it was transposed, and by an attraction put the ordinal numeral also into the accusative: *e.g.* **ante diem octavum Kalendas Apriles**, commonly written **iii Id. Jan., a.d. viii Kal. Apr.** Sometimes such a phrase as the last is governed by another preposition, as **ex a.d. iii Non. Jun. usque ad prid. Kal. Sept., from June 3rd to August 31st.**

The civil day began at midnight and extended to midnight. But the natural day was from sunrise to sunset. This period was divided into twelve hours (*hōrae*) of equal length. At Rome the day in midwinter is rather less than nine hours long; at midsummer it is rather more than fifteen hours. Hence a **hora** in winter was equal to about forty-five of our minutes, in summer to about seventy-five. The seventh hour always began at midday. The night was divided for military purposes into four watches (*vigiliae*) of equal length.

The following table gives the days of the months for the period after B.C. 45. Before that date, the dates in January, August, and December would answer to those in April, etc.—

JANUARY (so Aug. and Dec.)

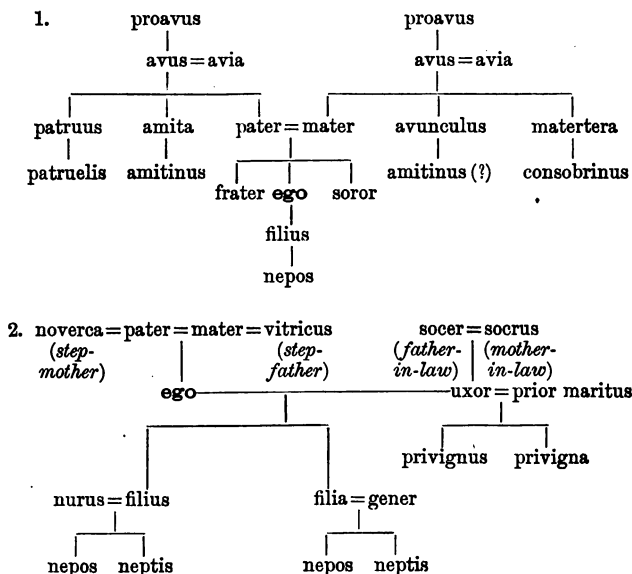
MARCH (so May, July, October).

APRIL (so June, Sept. Nov.)

1. Kal. Jan.	Kal. Mart.	Kal. Apr.
2. a.d. iv Non. Jan.	a.d. vi Non. Mart.	a.d. iv Non. Apr.
3. a.d. iii Non. Jan.	a.d. v Non. Mart.	a.d. iii Non. Apr.
4. Prid. Non. Jan.	a.d. iv Non. Mart.	Prid. Non. Apr.
5. Non. Jan.	a.d. iii Non. Mart.	Non. Apr.
6. a.d. viii Id. Jan.	Prid. Non. Mart.	a.d. viii Id. Apr.
7. a.d. vii Id. Jan.	Non. Mart.	a.d. vii Id. Apr.
8. a.d. vi Id. Jan.	a.d. viii Id. Mart.	a.d. vi Id. Apr.
12. Prid. Id. Jan.	a.d. iv Id. Mart.	Prid. Id. Apr.
13. Id. Jan.	a.d. iii Id. Mart.	Id. Apr.
14. a.d. xix Kal. Feb.	Prid. Id. Mart.	a.d. xviii Kal. Mai.
15. a.d. xviii Kal. Feb.	Id. Mart.	a.d. xvii Kal. Mai.
16. a.d. xvii Kal. Feb.	a.d. xvii Kal. Apr.	a.d. xvi Kal. Mai.
30. a.d. iii Kal. Feb.	a.d. iii Kal. Apr.	Prid. Kal. Mai.
31. Prid. Kal. Feb.	Prid. Kal. Apr.	...

February is like April, except that Feb. 14th is **a.d. xvi Kal. Mart.** and so on to Feb. 28th, which is **Prid. Kal. Mart.**

## C.—RELATIONS BY BLOOD AND MARRIAGE



## D.—ABBREVIATIONS

A Roman had always two names, sometimes three, or even more. The first (**praenomen**) denoted the individual, the second (**nomen**) the **gens** or "house" from which he came, the third (**cognomen**) the family within the **gens** to which he belonged, if the "house" was so divided. There was often also an **agnomen**, a personal or inherited surname. The **praenomina** were commonly abbreviated as follows—



A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Gaius.	P.	Publius.
Cn.	Gnaeus.	Q.	Quintus.
D.	Decimus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Manius.	Ti.	Tiberius.

In old Latin C was used for C and G alike : hence its retention to denote Gaius and Gnaeus.

#### E.—ROMAN WRITERS

The following dates of Roman writers are to be remembered—

T. Maccius Plautus, B.C. 254-184 ; comedies.

P. Terentius Afer, B.C. 185-159 ; comedies.

M. Tullius Cicero, B.C. 106-43 ; speeches, treatises on philosophy and rhetoric, letters.

C. Julius Caesar, B.C. 101-44 ; history of his wars (other writings not preserved).

Cornelius Nepos (rather later) ; lives of famous men.

T. Lucretius Carus, B.C. 90-55 ; philosophical poem.

C. Valerius Catullus, B.C. 87-54 ; poetry of various kinds.

C. Sallustius Crispus, B.C. 87-34 ; history.

P. Vergilius Maro, B.C. 70-19 ; rural and epic poems.

Q. Horatius Flaccus, B.C. 65-8 ; lyrical, satirical, and moral poems.

T. Livius, B.C. 59—A.D. 16 ; history of Rome.

Albius Tibullus, B.C. 54—B.C. 19 ; love poetry.

Sex. Propertius, B.C. 50—after B.C. 16 ; love poetry.

P. Ovidius Naso, B.C. 43—A.D. 17 ; poetry of various kinds.

Phaedrus (about this time) ; fables in verse.

Of later writers the most noteworthy are the philosopher, *Seneca* ; the satirist, *Persius* ; the epic poets, *Lucan*, *Valerius*, *Silius*, and *Statius* ; the learned *Pliny*, and his nephew *Pliny the Younger*, who has left many letters ; *Quintilian*, who wrote on rhetoric ; *Tacitus*, the historian ; and *Juvenal*, the satirist.

## F.—PROSODY AND METRE

1. Metre in Latin verse consists in a regular succession of long and short syllables, and is not determined by accent, as in English verse.

2. A syllable is long, if the vowel is either (1) long by nature, or (2) long by position.

Diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction, are long by nature, as **āurum**, **cōgo** (for **cōigo**).

3. Vowels are made long by position, if they are followed by *two* consonants, whether in the same word or in two different words, as **pātēr est**, but **pātēr dat**. But if the vowel was originally short, the short quantity may be retained before a mute (*p, b, c, g, t, d*) or *f*, followed by a liquid (*r, l*) in the same word, as **āper**, **āprum** or **āprum**.

4. Vowels are short which come before another vowel, or *h* followed by a vowel, in the same word, as **dēus**, **trāho**.

Long vowels and diphthongs are shortened before another vowel in composition, as **præuſtus**.

Except sometimes in the genitives of pronouns in **-ius**, in the genitive of *e*-stems in **-ei**, in **fio** (except before **-er**), and in Greek words.

5. In words of more than one syllable, a final

**a** and **e** are *short*, except that **a** is long in—

(a) ablative of *a*-stems, **mensā**;

(b) imperative of *a*-verbs, **āmā**;

(c) indeclinable words, **contrā** (but **itā**, **quiā**).

**e** is long in—

(a) cases of *e*-stems, **faciē**;

(b) imperative of *e*-verbs, **mōnē**;

(c) adverbs from *o*-stems, **doctē** (but **bēnē**, **mālē**).

**i** is long, except in **quāsī** and **nīsī**; it is common in **mīhī**, **tībī**, **sībī**, **ūbī**, **ībī**.

**o** is long, except in **ēgō**, **cītō**, **duō**, **mōdō**.

(In later poetry some other words have *o* common.)

**u** is long.

6. Final syllables ending in a single consonant, except **s**, are short. But in compounds of **pār** this is long, as **dispār**; and also in **illūc**, **istūc**; in **illīc**, **istīc** (nom.) it is common.

7. Of final syllables in **s**

**as**, **es**, **os**, are long;

**is**, **us**, are short.

But (1) when the genitive ends in **-ētis**, **-itis**, **-idis**, the nominative is **ēs**, as **mīlēs**, **obsēs**; with the exception of **abiēs**, **ariēs**, **pariēs**.

(2) **abēs**, etc., from **absum**, etc., **pēnēs** (preposition), **exōs**, **compōs**, **impōs**.

(3) **is** in (a) accusative, dat., and abl. plur., as **omnis**, **mensis**.

(b) 2nd sing. pres. ind. of *i*-verbs, as **audis**.

(c) **vēlis**, **nōlis**, **mālis**, **possis** (and other compounds of **sum**).

(d) 2nd pers. sing. fut. perf. and perf. subj., as **āmāvēris**, where it is common.

(4) **ūs** in (a) gen. sing. and nom. and acc. plur. of *u*-stems.

(b) nom. sing. of nouns where the stem has long **ū**, as **pālūs**, **pālūdis**; **virtūs**, **virtūtis**.

[There are many Greek words used in Latin poetry to which these rules do not apply; and some exceptions, not often occurring, have been omitted.]

In monosyllables the following exceptions to the above rules are to be noted: **ē**, **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nē**; **dic**, **hīc** (adverb), **hīc** (pronoun), **sīc**, **hōc**, **hūc**, **dūc**; **sāl**, **sōl**; **ēn**, **quīn**, **sīn**, **nōn**; **fār**, **lār**, **pār**, **vēr**, **cūr**, **fūr**; **ēs**, **glīs**, **vīs**, **līs**; **grūs**, **sūs**. Notice also **ōs** (*ossis*), but **ōs** (*oris*).

8. When a word ending in a vowel or diphthong was followed by another beginning with a vowel or *h*, the final vowel or diphthong of the former word was omitted or slurred over in pronunciation, so as not to count as a syllable in the verse. This is called *elision*.

A final *m* was pronounced so lightly as not to prevent elision. Thus **illum habet**, **ipse adest**, **vive hodie** are read as equal to **ill-abet**, **ips-adeſt**, **viv-odie**.

9. The metres most usual in Latin verse are (1) *Hexameters*, (2) *Elegiacs*.

The hexameter verse consists of six measures, each either a *dactyl* or a *spondee*. In a dactyl, one long syllable is followed by two short ones ( $- \cup$ ); in a spondee there are two long syllables ( $--$ ). A dactyl is therefore equal in metrical length to a spondee.

In a hexameter the first four measures or *feet* may be dactyls or spondees at pleasure; the fifth is always (with rare exceptions) a dactyl, the sixth a spondee. (The last syllable of a line, if not long by nature, is counted so for the metre.) There is always a *caesura*, *i.e.* a place where a word ends in the middle of a foot, either in the third foot, or in the fourth, or commonly in both.

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} -\cup & | & -\cup & | & -\cup & | & -\cup & | & -\cup & | & -- \\ -- & | & -- & | & -- & | & -- & | & -- & | & -- \end{array}$

*e.g.* Pēllībŭs | incŭbŭit || strā | tīs sōm | nōsqŭē pē | tīvit.

10. *Elegiac couplets* consist of a hexameter, followed by a *pentameter*. The pentameter consists of two parts, each answering to the first two feet and a half of the hexameter, except that in the latter half spondees are not admitted. Thus

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} -\cup & | & -\cup & | & - & || & -\cup & | & -\cup & | & - \\ -- & | & -- & | & - & || & - & | & - & | & - \end{array}$

*e.g.* Optīmă | cŭm cā | rā || mātŕē rē | lictă sŏr | or.

THE END



**RETURN TO: CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT**  
**198 Main Stacks**

LOAN PERIOD	1	2	3
Home Use			
	4	5	6

**ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS.**

Renewals and Recharges may be made 4 days prior to the due date. Books may be renewed by calling 642-3405.

**DUE AS STAMPED BELOW.**

SENT ON ILL

SEP 22 2006

U.C. BERKELEY

